

CONNECT

الصف الخامس الإبتدائى

5th PRIMARY FIRST TERM 2023

الفصل الدراسى الأول





QR CODES Listen to Vocabulary & Audioscripts

دار غزة
ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Contents



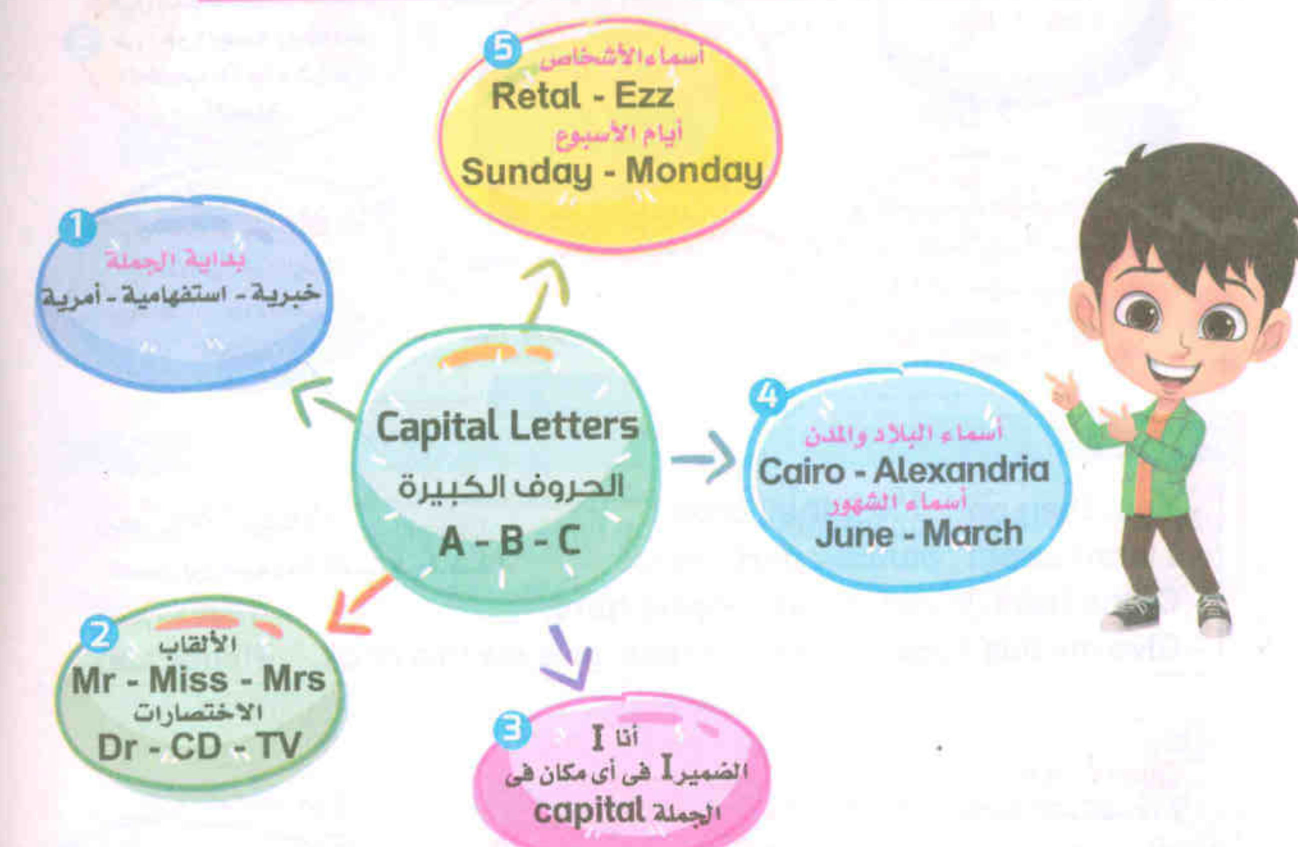




Punctuation

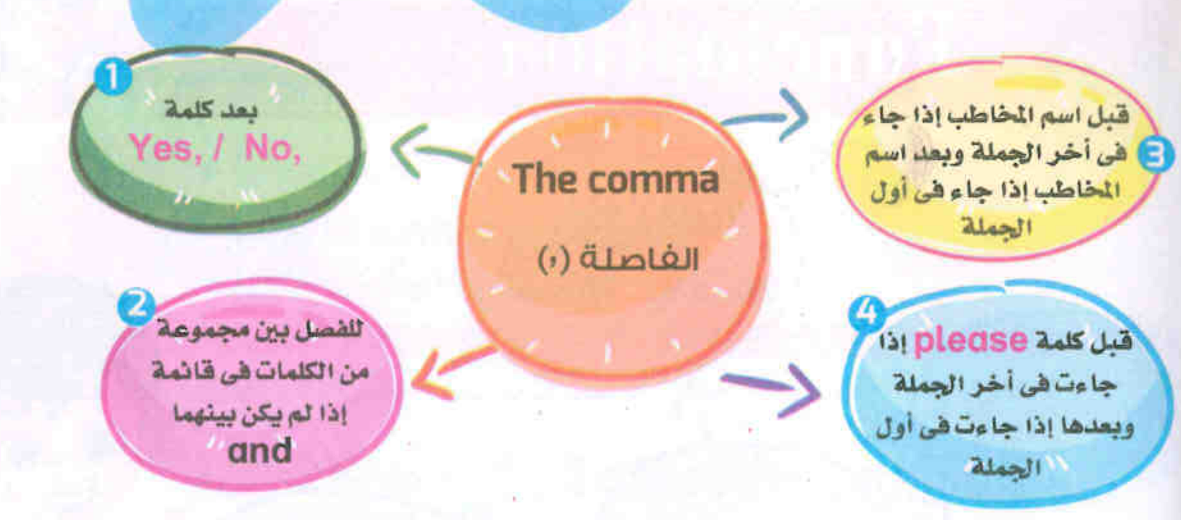
علامات الترقيم





Examples:

1. Yasin is a vet. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close your bag. (جملة أمرية)
3. Where's your umbrella? (جملة استفهامية)
4. I want some food. I'm hungry. (الضمير I)
5. We visited Giza in June. (أسماء مدن وشهور)
6. Mr Roshdi plays football on Sunday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)



Examples:

- Yes, they are. / No, they aren't. (بعد Yes, / No,)
- I want paper, pencils and pens. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات فى قائمة)
- Come here, Eyad. / Eyad, come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- Give me this book, please. / Please, give me this book. (كلمة Please)



Examples:

1. We are pupils. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close your eyes. (جملة أمرية)
3. What's your name? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hello! Mustafa. (علامة تعجب)



How to write a paragraph?
كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية؟

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة خمس جمل عن موضوع من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن تتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها فى اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولا ترتيب الجملة

فاعل			فعل		تكلمة الجملة
اسم شخص	مكان	شيء	مضارع بسيط / مستمر	ماضى بسيط / مستمر	ظرف زمان - مكان / صفة / حال
Ahmed	School	Car	is going / go / goes	was doing / did	home / yesterday happy / well



ثانيا صيغ الجمل المختلفة

الصيغة	المثال
فاعل + verb to be + صفة	She is happy.
فاعل + verb to be + وظيفة	Ahmed is a teacher.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + مكان	He went to school.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + زمن	We are open on Friday.
فاعل + فعل + مفعول	I love him.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + الساعة	I wake up at 9 o'clock.

1 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

Healthy food

I like healthy food. I always eat vegetables and fruit. Mom cooks healthy meals.She cooks chicken and rice for lunch. We eat bananas and grapes for dessert.



Let's remember!

1 Unjumble the letters to make words: اعد ترتيب الحروف لكتابة الكلمات:

1 
lcel ehopn ____________

2 
emtor ____________

3 
lpouoinlt ____________




4 
aspsdowr ____________

5 
tbao ____________

6 
atxi ____________

7 
odruhtg ____________

8 
mart ____________

9 
od eracrshe ____________

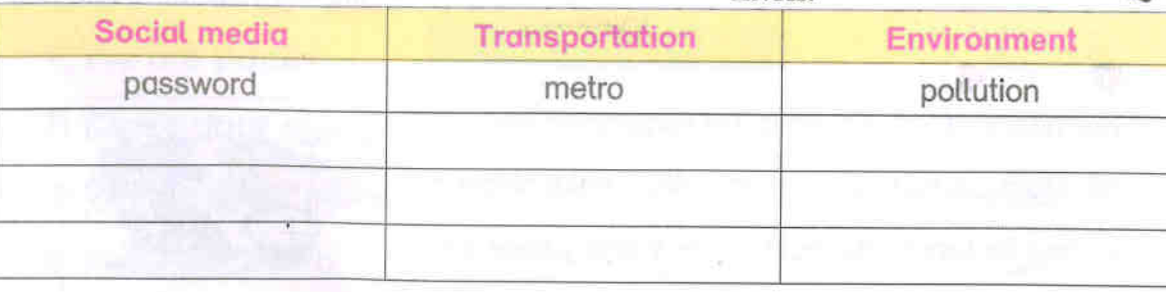
10 
artfcif ____________

11 
lfodo ____________

12 
etxt smeagse ____________

2 Complete the table with the words in Exercise 1. Then listen, check, and say the words: اكمل الجدول بكلمات تمرين ١ . ثم استمع وتأكد وقل الكلمات



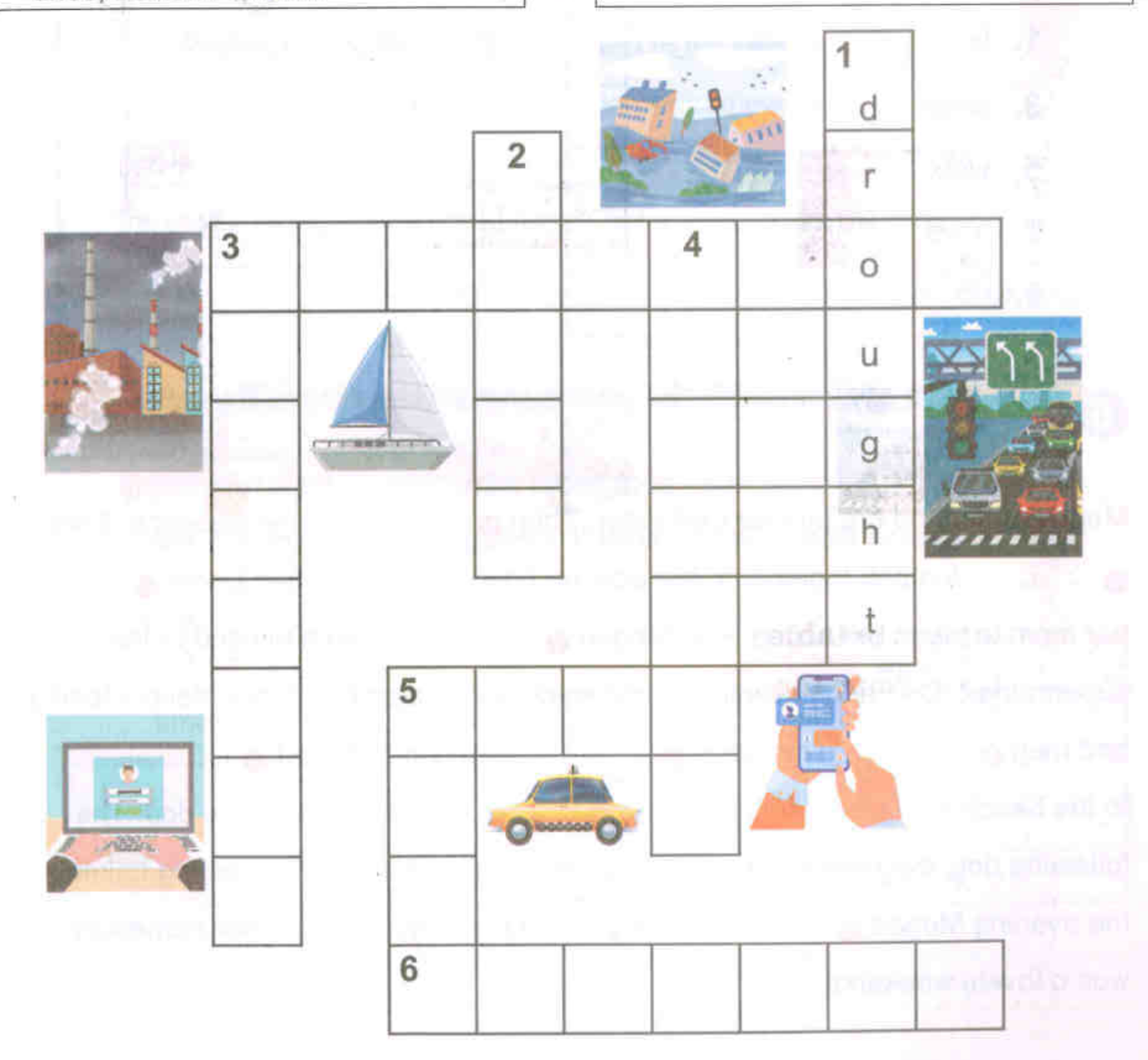



Social media	Transportation	Environment
password	metro	pollution

3 Now complete the crossword with the words in Exercise 1: اكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة بكلمات من تمرين ١ :

Down
1. When there isn't enough water.
2. When there's too much water.
3. The special code you need to access your computer.
4. Lots of cars on the road.
5. Public transportation that runs on lines, but isn't a train.

Across
3. When there are a lot of harmful chemicals in the air.
5. A car you can ride in the street, which someone else drives.
6. A small note you write to someone on your cell phone.



4 Write three sentences about your favorite transportation. Talk about why you like it. Is it good or bad for the environment?

اكتب ثلاث جمل عن وسيلة المواصلات المفضلة لديك. تكلم عن أسباب حبك لها. هل هى مفيدة أم ضارة بالبيئة؟

My favorite transportation is ....

....

....

....

5 Write the past simple tense for the verbs below. Then check the irregular verbs: اكتب صيغة الماضى البسيط للأفعال بالأسفل. ثم تأكد من الأفعال غير المنتظمة:

	Verb	Past	☐		Verb	Past	☐
1.	is	was	✓	2.	play	played	
3.	swim	....		4.	see	....	
5.	walk	....		6.	study	....	
7.	have	....		8.	help	....	
9.	do	....		10.	go	....	

6 Complete the text with the past simple verbs from Exercise 5:

اكمل النص بأفعال فى الماضى البسيط من تمرين ٥:

Maged and Lama are brother and sister. They (1) ...had... a nice weekend. They (2) .... football together in the park on Friday morning. Then Lama (3) .... her mom to clean the house. And Maged (4) .... with his dad to the supermarket. On Friday evening, Lama went to the cinema with her friend's family and they (5) .... a movie. It (6) .... very good. Maged (7) .... to the beach along the coast path and (8) .... in the sea with his dad. The following day, they went to the zoo together. They saw lots of interesting animals. In the evening Maged (9) .... for a test and Lama (10) .... her homework. It was a lovely weekend!

7 Work with a partner. Answer the questions: اشترك مع زميلك. اجب عن الأسئلة:

1. Did Maged and Lama like their weekend? Why / Why not?
2. Who helped mom?
3. Who went swimming with dad?
4. Who went to the zoo?

8 Circle the correct verb in the sentences: ضع دائرة حول الفعل الصحيح فى الجمل:

1. You **should** / **can** get to the train station by 10 am to catch the train.
2. We **must** / **can't** plant more trees to get fresher air.
3. Wael **should** / **shouldn't** give his password to his friends.
4. Dina **can** / **needs** to buy another pen to do her homework.
5. Dalia **should** / **can't** put on her seat belt.
6. You **mustn't** / **need** to look right and left before you cross the road.

9 You are buying a tablet with your parents. Complete the table with the pros and cons from the box, then add two ideas of your own:

تشترى تابلت مع والديك. اكمل الجدول بالمميزات والعيوب من الإطار ثم ضف فكرتين من عندك:

small and light - can't write Word files - can read books on it
the camera isn't very good - it looks cool - small screen

Buying a tablet

Pros مميزات	Cons عيوب
small and light	small screen

10 Complete the phrases for writing about pros and cons with words in the box: اكمل العبارات عن كتابة المميزات والعيوب بكلمات من الأطار كالمثال :

also - general /conclusion - opinion - other - think - this

1. Many people think that tablets are small and light. ...
2. They .... say ...
3. As well as .... , ...
4. But, on the .... hand ...
5. In .... , ...
6. My .... is ...

11 Write a paragraph using the phrases in Exercises 9 and 10

اكتب فقرة إنشائية باستخدام العبارات بتمرين ٩ و ١٠ :

Many people think that tablets are small and light. ....

.... They also say ....

....

But, on the other hand, they think that tablets have small screens. ....

....

My opinion is, ...

In general, ...



Theme 1

I discover myself

Unit 1





We plant our food



نحن نزرع طعامنا

Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

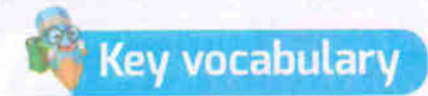
1. Listen, read, research, and write about different types of food.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجرى بحثًا ويكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الطعام.
2. Understand food chains. -يفهم الطالب السلاسل الغذائية.
3. Listen to a conversation about favorite food.
   - يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة حول الطعام المفضل.
4. Practice making suggestions with **how about**.
   - يتدرب الطالب على تقديم الاقتراحات باستخدام ماذا عن.
5. Read a fairy tale. - يقرأ الطالب قصة خيالية.
6. Practice saying vowel sounds. - يتدرب الطالب على نطق الأصوات المتحركة.
7. Understand decimal fractions. - يفهم الطالب الكسور العشرية.
8. Write a recipe. - يكتب الطالب وصفة طعام.
9. Research and make a poster about fruit and vegetables that grow in Egypt.
   - يجرى الطالب بحثًا ويعمل ملصق عن الفاكهة والخضروات التي تنمو في مصر.







★ Food and drink



Key vocabulary




استمع إلى المفردات:



chocolate شيكولاتة



carrots جزر



eggs بيض



lemons ليمون أصفر



limes ليمون أخضر





beans فول





pineapples أناناس



coconuts جوز الهند



onions بصل

Other words كلمات أخرى

favorite	مفضل
easy	سهل
healthy	صحي
unhealthy	غير صحي
chicken	دجاجة/ لحم دجاج
fish	سمكة/ لحم سمك

mango	ثمرة مانجو
garden	حديقة
potatoes	بطاطس
fresh	طازج
market	سوق

Help your child learn about food and drink: ساعد طفلك يتعلم مفردات عن الطعام والشراب:

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
love	يحب	loved
collect	يجمع	collected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
have/has	يملك	had
eat	يأكل	ate
grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew
sell	يبيع	sold

Study the following

1. What's your favorite food?
   - ما هو طعامك المفضل؟
2. I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it?
   - أحب الشوكولاتة أيضًا. لكنها ليست صحية ، أليس كذلك؟
3. I think it's OK to eat a little.
   - أعتقد انه من الجيد تناول القليل منها.
4. It is unhealthy if you eat a lot.
   - من غير الصحي تناول الكثير منها.
5. We have a mango tree in the garden.
   - لدينا شجرة مانجو في الحديقة.
6. We have a lime tree and a lemon tree.
   - لدينا شجرة ليمون أخضر وشجرة ليمون أصفر.
7. My uncle grows onions and potatoes.
   - يزرع عمي البصل والبطاطس.
8. He collects fresh eggs every day.
   - يجمع البيض الطازج كل يوم.
9. Sometimes he sells them at the market.
   - يبيعه في بعض الأحيان في السوق.
10. Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground.
    - لا تنمو ثمار الأناناس على الأشجار. إنها تنمو على الأرض.

1 Listen and read: Does Farida think chocolate is healthy?

استمع وأقرأ، هل تعتقد فريدة أن الشيكولاتة طعام صحى؟





Tapescript نص الاستماع استمع إلى النص:

Dina : What's your favorite food, Farida?

Farida : That's easy! It's chocolate.

Dina : Mmm ... I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it?

Farida : I think it's OK to eat a little. But yes, it is unhealthy if you eat a lot.

Dina : What's your favorite healthy food?

Farida : Oh, I like chicken and I like fish. But my favorite is mango. We have a mango tree in the garden.

Dina : I love mango too. We don't have a mango tree. We have a lime tree and a lemon tree.

Farida : My uncle grows onions and potatoes. He has chickens too. He collects fresh eggs every day. Sometimes he sells them at the market.

2 Listen again and answer T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences:

استمع مرة أخرى واجب بصح أو خطأ وصحح الجمل الخطأ:

1- Farida's favorite food is chocolate. T

2- Dina doesn't like chocolate. ☐

3- Farida's favorite healthy food is fish. ☐

4- Farida has a mango tree in her garden. ☐

5- Dina has a mango tree in her garden. ☐

6- Farida's uncle buys eggs at the market. ☐

Help your child listen and read ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

3 Look and write:

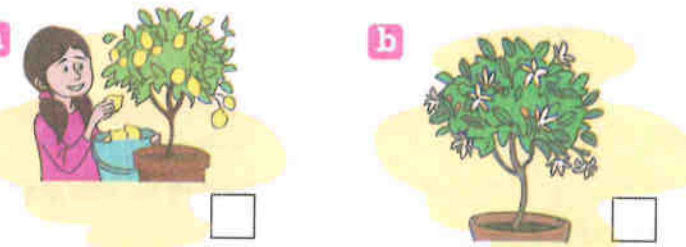
انظر واكتب:

beans - carrots - chocolate - coconuts - eggs
lemons - limes - onions - pineapples

1 lemons
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....

4 Look and put the pictures in the correct order:

انظر وضع الصورة فى الترتيب الصحيح:



a ☐



b ☐



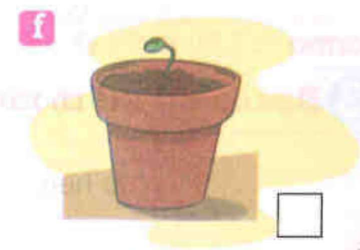
c 1



d ☐



e ☐



f ☐

5 Do you grow fruit at home? Say:

هل تزرع فاكهة فى المنزل؟ قل:

We grow mangoes in our garden!

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

- Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground.






Activities

1 Match: صل:



2 Read and complete the dialog with the following words:

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة بالكلمات الآتية:

unhealthy - favorite - healthy

Fatma : What's your ❶ .... food, Karma?

Karma : It's mango. It is ❷ ....

Fatma : You're right. My favorite food is chocolate.

Karma : I think it's ❸ ....

3 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

chickens - market - grows

My uncle is a farmer. He ❶ .... onions and tomatoes. He gets fresh eggs from the ❷ .... He eats some eggs and sells some eggs at the ❸ ....



4 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. food - What's - favorite - your?

....

2. a mango tree - garden - the - We - in - have.

....

3. and - My - onions - grows - uncle - potatoes.

....

4. collects - eggs - He - every day - fresh.

....

5. don't - trees - Pineapples - on - grow.

....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

dina doesn t like chocolate

....

do you grow fruit, aya

....



Lesson 2 ★ CLIL Science




استمع إلى المفردات:


chickpeas حمص


seeds بذور


rows صفوف (خطوط زراعية)


harvest يحصد

wheat قمح

date palm نخيل البلح


caterpillar يرقة



beetle خنفساء


fungi فطر


eagle عقاب



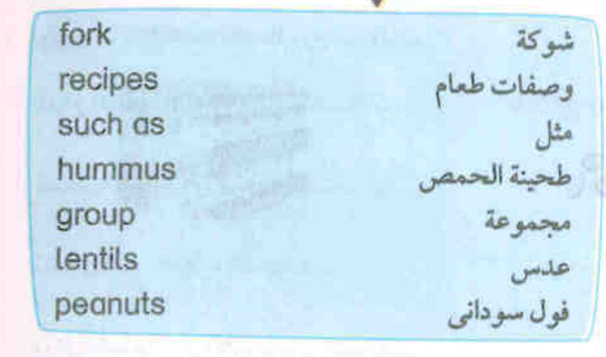
lizard سحلية


snake ثعبان

ingredients	مكونات الطعام
legumes	بقوليات
digestive system	الجهاز الهضمى
food chain	السلسلة الغذائية
energy	طاقة
producers	منتجون

consumers	مستهلكون
primary consumer	مستهلك أساسى
secondary consumer	مستهلك ثانوى
tertiary consumer	مستهلك من الدرجة الثالثة
decomposers	كائنات محللة (المحللات)
ecosystem	النظام البيئى

Other words كلمات أخرى



fork	شوكة
recipes	وصفات طعام
such as	مثل
hummus	طحينة الحمص
group	مجموعة
lentils	عدس
peanuts	فول سودانى

properly	بشكل صحيح
delicious	لذيذ / شهى
regularly	بانتظام
nutrients	عناصر غذائية
start	بداية
grass	عشب / حشائش

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
belong to	ينتمى إلى	belonged to
check	يفحص	checked
water	يسقى الزرع	watered
turn	يحول/ يتحول	turned
provide	يزود/يمد	provided
harvest	يحصد	harvested

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
keep	يحافظ على	kept
buy	يشترى	bought
give back	يعيد	gave back
show	يظهر/ يبين	showed

Study the following

1. Chickpeas are an important ingredient in many recipes such as koshari and hummus.
الحمص مُكون مهم في العديد من وصفات الطعام مثل الكشري وطحينة الحمص.
2. They belong to a group of foods called legumes.
ينتمي إلى مجموعة من الأطعمة تسمى البقوليات.
3. Chickpeas are a healthy food.
الحمص غذاء صحي.
4. They can help to keep your digestive system working properly.
يمكن أن يساعد في الحفاظ على عمل الجهاز الهضمي بشكل صحيح.
5. After a while, the chickpeas will turn brown.
سيتحول لون الحمص بعد فترة إلى اللون البني.

6 This is when you harvest them and collect the seeds.
ويحدث ذلك عند حصاده وجمع البذور.

7 The sun provides energy for plants to grow. توفر الشمس الطاقة لنمو النباتات.

8 Plants and trees are called producers. تسمى النباتات والأشجار بالمنتجين.

9 Animals are called consumers. تسمى الحيوانات بالمستهلكين.

10 Primary consumers eat plants. يأكل المستهلكون الأساسيون النباتات.

11 Secondary consumers eat small animals and insects.
يأكل المستهلكون الثانويون الحيوانات الصغيرة والحشرات.

12 Tertiary consumers eat larger animals.
يأكل المستهلكون من الدرجة الثالثة الحيوانات الكبيرة.

13 Decomposers give nutrients back to the ecosystem.
يعيد المحللون العناصر الغذائية إلى النظام البيئي.

1 Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

From farm to fork

استمع إلى النص:



Ashraf grows chickpeas. Chickpeas are an important ingredient in many recipes such as koshari and hummus.

Chickpeas aren't a fruit or a vegetable. They belong to a group of foods called legumes. Other legumes are lentils and peanuts.

Chickpeas are a healthy food. They can help to keep your digestive system working properly.

The chickpeas that you eat are the seeds of the chickpea plant. This is how you grow chickpeas and make them into delicious meals.

2 Now put the pictures (a–f) in the correct order (1–6):

ضع الصور فى الترتيب الصحيح:

a
Put the seeds into bags and take them to the market. [ ]

b

Marwa puts the chickpeas in koshari and enjoys it with her family. [ ]

c

Check the chickpea plants. They should look green and healthy. [ ]

d

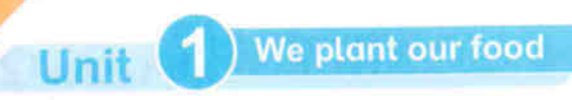
Marwa buys some chickpeas and other ingredients at the market to make a delicious meal. [ ]

e

Plant chickpeas in rows. Water them regularly. [1]

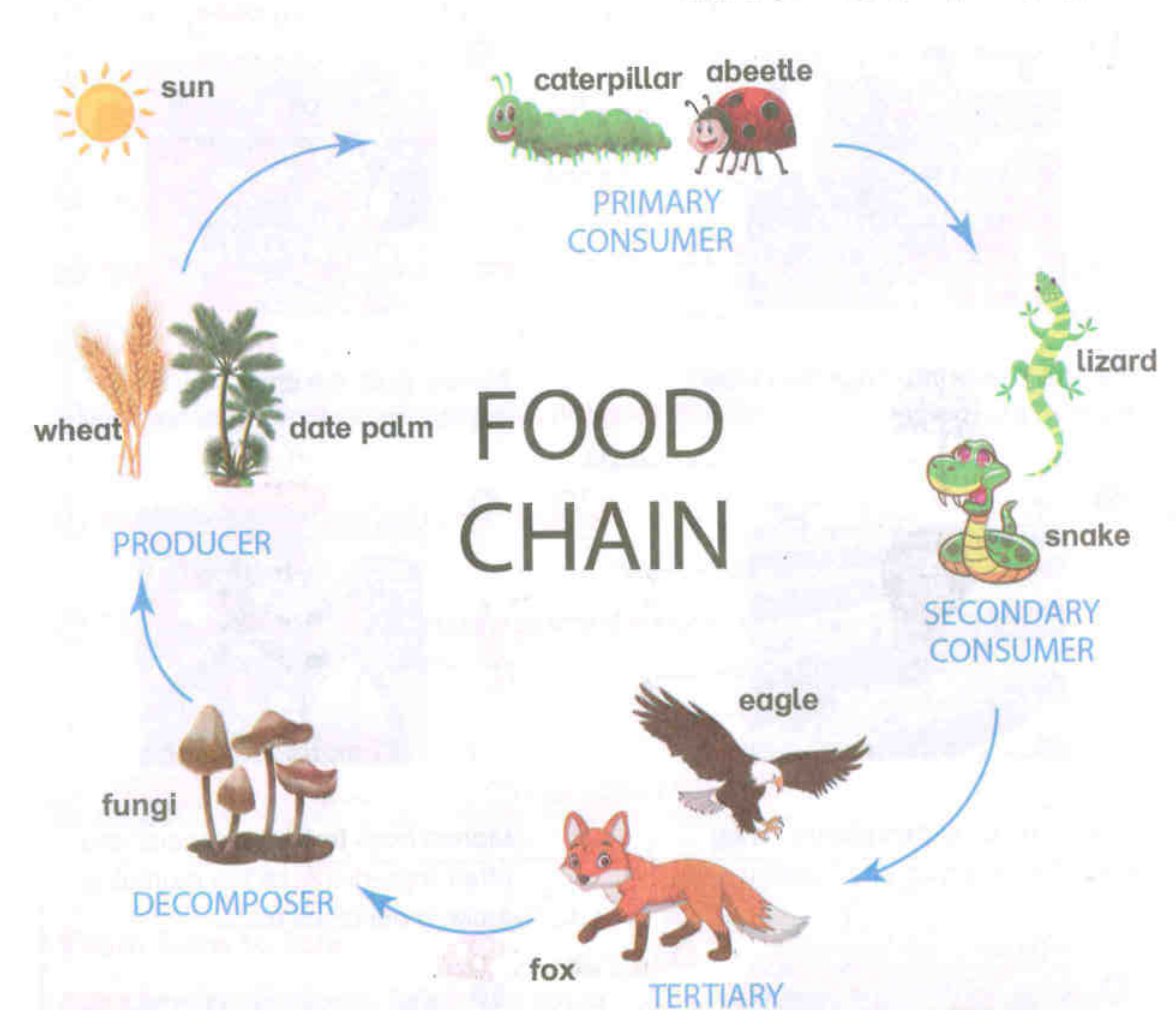
f

After a while, the chickpeas will turn brown. This is when you harvest them and collect the seeds. [ ]



3 Look and read. What are consumers? What are producers?

انظر واقرأ. ما هم المستهلكون؟ ما هم المنتجون؟



استمع إلى النص:

The sun provides **energy** for plants to grow. Plants and trees are called **producers**. Animals are called **consumers**. **Primary** consumers eat plants.	**Secondary** consumers eat small animals and insects. **Tertiary** consumers eat larger animals. **Decomposers** give nutrients back to the **ecosystem**

- لاحظ من الشكل أن النباتات هى المنتجة وباقى الكائنات هى المستهلكة.

4 Listen and circle the correct words

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة:



استمع إلى النص:

This is called a 'food **1 triangle / chain**'. It shows how plants and animals get their **2 energy / water.** At the start of the chain, we can see **3 consumers / plants.** These are called **4 producers / consumers.**
They get energy from the **5 ground / sun.** Animals do not get their energy from the sun. **6 Plants / Animals** eat plants or other animals for energy.

5 Look and write P (producer) or C (consumer):

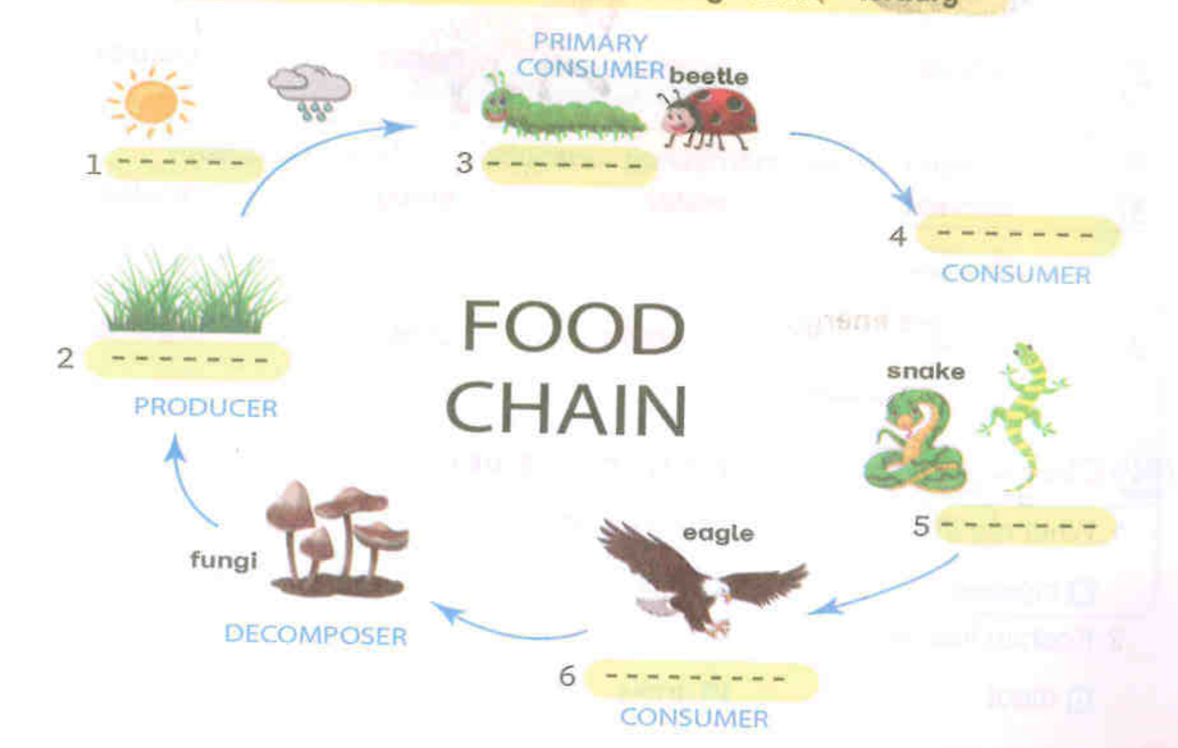
انظر واكتب منتج (P) أو مستهلك (C)



6 Complete the food chain. Use the words in the box to help you:

اكمل السلسلة الغذائية. استخدم الكلمات فى الإطار لتساعدك.

caterpillar - grass - sun - secondary - lizard - tertiary



Activities



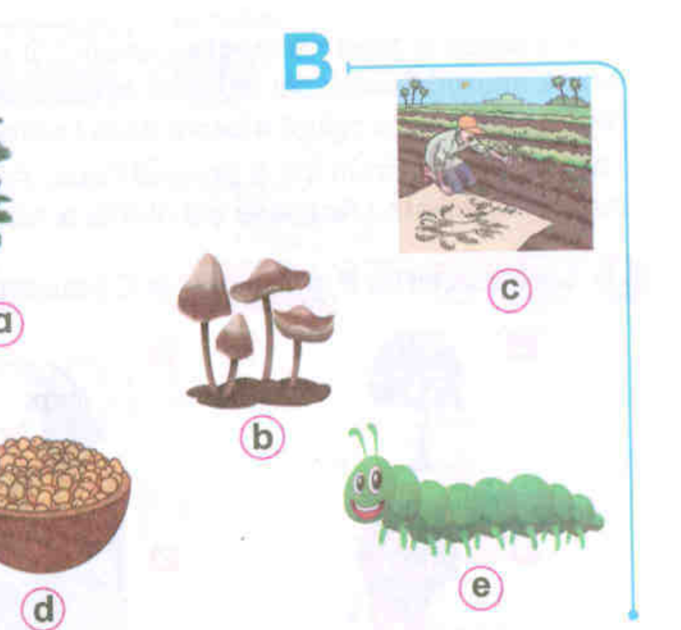
1 Match: صل:



A

1. caterpillar
2. chickpeas
3. harvest
4. date palm
5. fungi

B



2 Circle the odd one out: ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1	wheat	date palm	beetle	chickpeas
2	lizard	fungi	snake	crocodile
3	harvest	water	enjoy	lentils
4	fruit	vegetables	eagle	legumes

3 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. What are the .... of this meal?

   a ingredients b chains c markets

2. Koshari has lentils, rice and ....

   a meat b grass c chickpeas

3. Lentils, peanuts and chickpeas belong to a group of food called ....

   a fruits b legumes c vegetables

4. The food .... shows how plants and animals get their energy.

   a necklace b ring c chain

5. Plants are ....

   a consumers b producers c decomposers

4 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

energy - animals - consumers

The food chain contains plants and 1 .... Plants are producers but animals are 2 .... The sun provides 3 .... for plants to grow.

5 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The food chain

food chain - ends - producers - consumers - decomposers

- -
- -
- -
- -
- -

FOOD CHAIN

sun

caterpillar

beetle

wheat

date palm

lizard

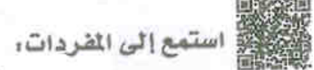
snake

eagle

fox

fungi

Lesson 3 ★ My shopping list





استمع إلى المفردات:





bananas موز | carrots جزر | chicken دجاج | chocolate شيكولاتة






nuts مكسرات | mangoes مانجو | watermelon بطيخ | cookies كعك محلى





onions بصل | koshari كشرى | tomatoes طماطم



Other words كلمات أخرى

lovely	جميل
How about....?	ماذا عن...؟
How much?	كم سعر؟
a good price	سعر جيد/مناسب
juicy	كثير العصارة
in total	إجمالا
lucky	محظوظ
mahalabia	مهلبية
of course	بالتأكيد
fridge	ثلاجة
list	قائمة
dessert	طعام التحلية

grapes	عنب
ful medames	فول مدمس
boiled egg	بيض مسلوق
yogurt	زبادى
fruit salad	سلطة فواكه
fried eggs	بيض مقلى
french fries	بطاطس مقلية
cucumber	خيار
jam	مربى
honey	عسل
a balanced diet	نظام غذائى
shawerma	شاورما

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
visit	يزور	visited
unpack	يفرغ	unpacked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
come	يأتى	came
buy	يشترى	bought
think	يفكر	thought

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 نستخدم للإقتراح

How about + V + ing..........?

- How about buying carrots?

Let's + inf.

- Let's buy a nice juicy pineapple.

2 would like

للسؤال بمعنى ماذا تريد نستخدم:

What would you like...?

- I would like some carrots, please.

للسؤال بمعنى هل تريد:

- Would you like an orange?
- Yes, please. للموافقة:
- No, thanks. للرفض:



3 للسؤال بمعنى هل يوجد؟

Are there + اسم جمع....?
Is there + اسم مفرد / اسم لا يعد....?

- Are there any apples?
- Yes, there are. إجابة فى الإثبات:
- No, there aren't. إجابة فى النفى:



Language Functions قواعد لغوية

Countable & Uncountable nouns

• تنقسم الأسماء إلى:

Countable nouns	أسماء يمكن عدها
Uncountable nouns	أسماء لا يمكن عدها

أولاً : الأسماء التى يمكن عدها Countable nouns

- الأسماء التى تعد إما أن تأتى مفردة فيسبقها a / an أو تأتى جمع دون إضافة a / an
- الأسماء التى تعد أما أن تنتهى بالنهايات القادمة أو تجمع جمع شاذ.

s - es - ies - ves - جمع شاذ

- كيف نكّون الجمع من الأسماء المفردة التى تعد:

١ - إما بإضافة s آخر الاسم: book → books

٢ - أو بإضافة es آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الموضحة ←:

s - x - ch - sh - ss - o

bus	→	buses	beach	→	beaches
tomato	→	tomatoes	glass	→	glasses

٣ - أو بإضافة ies إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (y) وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف (y).

- أما إذا سبق حرف (y) حرف متحرك لا يحذف.

y + حرف ساكن (candy) → ies (candies)

y + حرف متحرك (boy) → ys (boys)

٤ - أو بإضافة ves آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ f / fe حيث تحذف كما يلي: knife → knives

٥ - وهناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هي:

mouse	→	mice	ox	→	oxen
man	→	men	woman	→	women
child	→	children	tooth	→	teeth

ثانيًا : الأسماء التى لا تعد Uncountable nouns

- الأسماء التى لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد ومن أمثلتها كل المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة مثل:

rice / milk / chocolate / yogurt / jam / honey / soup

a / an

- نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بحرف ساكن وتعنى واحدة من هذا الاسم.

- a banana موزة   a lemon ليمونة

- نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بحرف متحرك وتعنى واحدة من هذا الاسم.

- الحروف المتحركة:

a - e - i - o - u

- an orange   an apple

لاحظ ١ - إذا كانت الكلمة تبدأ بحرف ساكن غير منطوق والحرف الثانى بالكلمة متحرك فهنا نضع (an).

- an hour

٢ - حرف (u) اول الكلمة له نطقان:

١ - إذا نطق مثل نطقه فى كلمة (bus) هنا نضع (an) ويعامل كحرف متحرك.

- an umbrella

٢ - اما إذا نطق كما ينطق الحرف (u) بالكامل فى الأبجدية هنا نضع حرف (a) ويعامل حرف (u) مثل الحروف الساكنة.

- a university   a uniform

some / any

- تستخدم كلمة some بمعنى (بعض) فى الجملة المثبتة. ويأتى بعد some اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- I would like some apples, please.

- وتستخدم any بمعنى (أى) فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال . ويأتى بعد any اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- Are there any tomatoes?
- We haven't got any grapes.

Study the following

1. What would you like? ماذا تريد؟
2. I would like some carrots, please. أريد بعض الجزر، من فضلك.
3. Are there any tomatoes? هل هناك أي طماطم؟
4. How about buying some lemons and pineapples, too? ماذا عن شراء بعض الليمون والأناناس أيضا؟
5. That's all I need for now. هذا كل ما احتاجه الآن.
6. I would like some potatoes and some onions, please. اريد بعض البطاطس وبعض البصل، من فضلك.
7. Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs. تأكد من تناول نظام غذائي متوازن حتى يحصل جسمك على العناصر الغذائية التي يحتاجها.
8. Why is it important to eat healthy food? لماذا من المهم تناول طعام صحي؟
9. How do you make sensible food choices? كيف تتخذ خيارات غذائية معقولة؟

Unit 1 We plant our food

1 Listen and write the names: استمع واكتب الأسماء:

Amal - Nada - Ibrahim - Ashraf

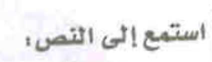




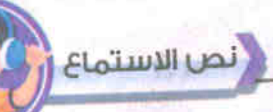




1 ------------ 2 ------------ 3 ------------ 4 ------------







Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

Narrator 1:

Market trader : Lovely tomatoes! Come and buy! How about buying some lovely red tomatoes?

Mom : Oh, I think we need some tomatoes. How much are they?

Market trader : They're a good price: they're only three pounds for one kilogram.

Mom : OK. We will have a kilogram, please.

Marker trader : How about buying some carrots too?

Mom : No, thank you.

Ibrahim : Mom, please can we have a pineapple.

Mom : Hmm, yes, Ibrahim! Let's buy a nice juicy pineapple.

Marker trader : There you go. That'll be 20 pounds in total, please.

Narrator 2:

Nada : I really like coming to your house, Grandma.

Grandma : I like it when you visit me, Nada.

Nada : We haven't got a mango tree in our garden at home. We've got a lemon tree.

Grandma : I know. I'm lucky to have one. Would you like to have a mango now?

Nada : Yes, please! I would also like to have your mango and coconut . mahalabia later. Have you got any coconut?

Grandma : Yes, I bought some in the market this morning.

Narrator 3:

Mom 2 : Ashraf, will you come to the market with me?

Ashraf : Yes, of course. What do we need to buy?

Mom 2 : We need to buy bread and rice. What would you like for lunch on Saturday? Uncle Faisal is coming.

Ashraf : Oh, I would like koshari, please. It's my favorite!

Mom 2 : OK, are there any onions in the fridge?

Ashraf : No, there aren't. So, we need to buy bread, rice, and onions.

Narrator 4

Dad : OK, what do we need to get, Amal?

Amal : Mom says three lemons and some eggs.

Dad : Here are the lemons.

Amal : The eggs are over there. Oh, and chocolate too!

Dad : Is it on Mom's list?

Amal : No, it isn't. But can I have some, please?

Dad : OK, but don't eat it until after dinner, Amal!

2 Listen again. Complete the sentences with the words in the box: استمع مرة أخرى. اكمل الجمل بالكلمات من الإطار:

chocolate - koshari - mahalabia - mango - onions - pineapple - tomatoes

1- Ibrahim and his mom buy ----------------- (tomatoes) and a ------------.

2- Nada doesn't have a ------------------------- tree in her garden.

3- Nada wants ----------------- for dessert.

4- Ashraf and his mom need to buy bread, rice, and -------------------.

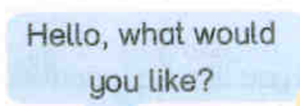
5- Ashraf wants ------------------------------------ for lunch.

6- ----------------- is not on Amal's mom's list.

3 Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

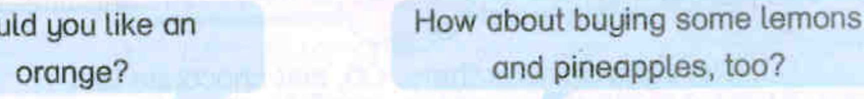


استمع إلى النص:













4 Look and circle the correct words: انظر وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة:

1. Are there any **tomato / tomatoes**?
2. I would like **some / any** eggs, please.
3. Please, can I have **a / an** apple?
4. I would like **a / an** pineapple and **a / an** orange.
5. Do you have **a / any** carrots, please?
6. How about **buy / buying** an apple, Mom?
7. How about buying some **grapes / grape**?

5 Listen and check (✓) the things Jana and her mom have:

استمع وضع علامة (✓) على الأشياء التى لدى جنى ووالدتها:



استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

Mom : Jana, can you help me unpack the bags, please?

Jana : Yes, of course. Oh, good, you bought mangoes at the market. I love mangoes. Oh, and you bought chocolate. Mmm, delicious!

Mom : Put that in the cupboard, please. It's for dessert tomorrow. We only have chocolate on Saturdays – it isn't very healthy.

Jana : OK. Where shall I put the cookies?

Mom : Please put them in the top cupboard. You can have one after school tomorrow, but just one – they aren't very healthy!

Jana : OK. I'll put the bananas in the fruit bowl on the table.

Mom : Thank you. Is the chicken in the fridge? It's for shawerma for lunch today.

Jana : Yes, it's there with the carrots.

Mom : Thank you, Jana. Do you want Om Ali for dessert tonight? I bought a bag of nuts.

Jana : Yes, please, Mom! That's my favorite!



6 **Look again at the foods in Exercise 8. Are they healthy or unhealthy? Think and compare with a partner:**

انظر للأطعمة التى فى تمرين (٨). هل هى صحية ام غير صحية؟ فكر وقارن مع زميلك:

7 **Read the food diaries. Order them from 1 (healthiest) to 3 (unhealthiest):**

اقرأ الوجبات اليومية ورتبهم من ١ (أكثر الأطعمة صحيًا) إلى ٣ (أكثر الأطعمة غير الصحية):

a
Breakfast: ful medames and bread, boiled egg, fresh juice
Lunch: koshari, salad, an orange
Dinner: yogurt, fruit salad
☐

b
Breakfast: 2 fried eggs, french fries, cheese
Lunch: burger and french fries
Dinner: pizza
☐

c
Breakfast: cheese and bread, cucumber, jam
Lunch: chicken, french fries, rice
Dinner: yogurt and honey, cake
☐

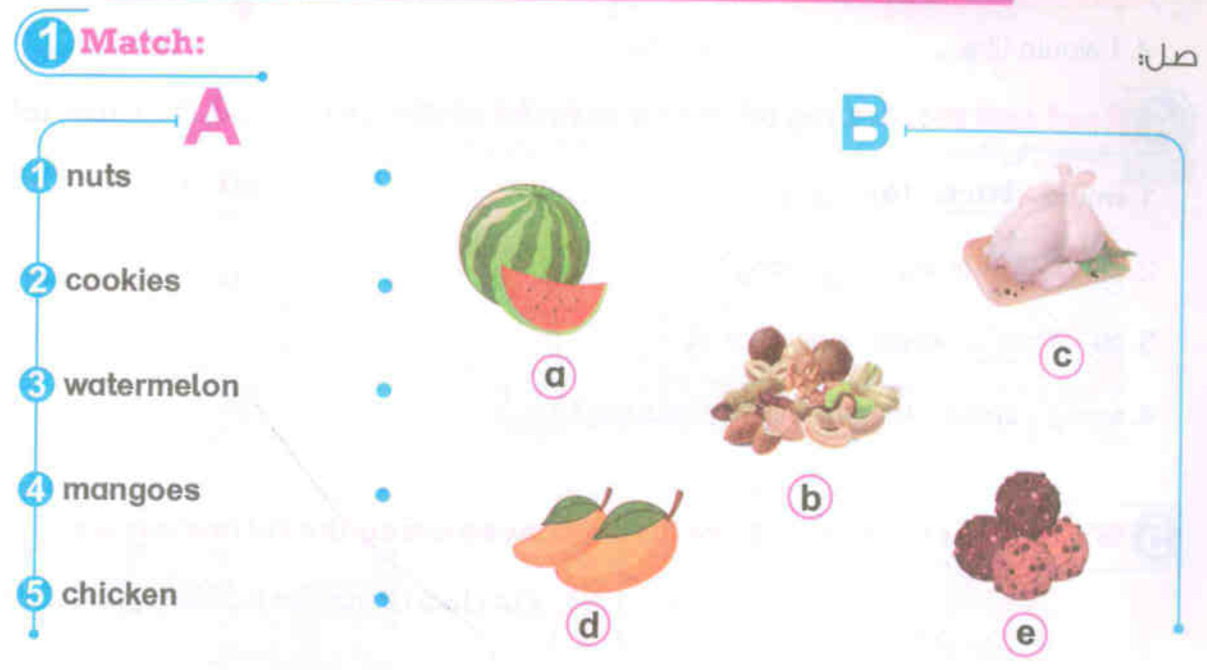
Tip!

- Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs.

تأكد انك تتناول نظام غذائى صحى حتى يحصل جسدك على العناصر الغذائية التى يحتاجها.
شارك زميلك. هل نظامك الغذائى صحى ام غير صحي؟ ناقش. فكر فى هذه الاسئلة.



1 **Match:** صل:



2 **Choose the right answer from a, b or c:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I want to eat .... apple.
   a a   b some   c an
2. Amal doesn't have .... onions.
   a some   b any   c a
3. How about .... chocolate?
   a eat   b eats   c eating
4. Are there any .... ?
   a mango   b grapes   c pineapple
5. I would like .... bread.
   a a   b an   c some
6. Do you have .... potatoes?
   a a   b any   c some

3 **Complete the sentences:** أكمل الجمل:

1. I would like .... (a) orange, please.
2. Ahmed doesn't have .... (some) apples.



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3. Please, chop .... (a) onion.

4. I would like .... (any) rice.

4 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. would - What - like - you?

----

2. there - tomatoes - Are - any?

----

3. all - That's - need - now - for - I.

----

4. some - about - lemons - How - buying?

----

5 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



Healthy & unhealthy food

healthy food - fruit - favorite - unhealthy - chocolate



----

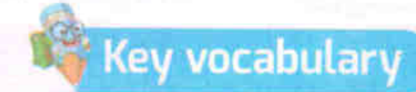
6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم:

1- would you like some juice, amir

2- no thanks

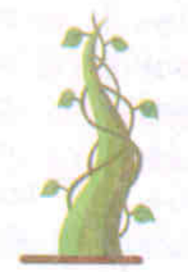


Jack and the Beanstalk









beanstalk ساق الفاصوليا



castle قلعة



giant عملاق





chop يقطع

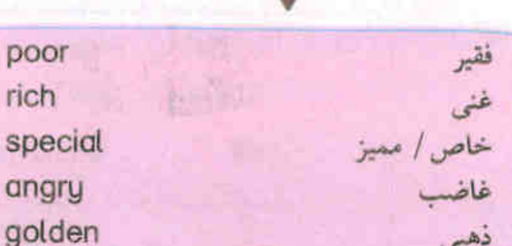


cage قفص



grab ينتزع / يمسك

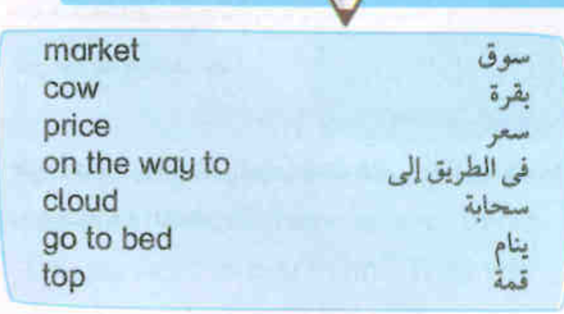
Adjectives صفات



poor	فقير
rich	غني
special	خاص / مميز
angry	غاضب
golden	ذهبي

magic	سحر / سحري
terrible	فظيع
free	حر / طليق
kind	عطوف

Other words كلمات أخرى



market	سوق
cow	بقرة
price	سعر
on the way to	في الطريق إلى
cloud	سحابة
go to bed	ينام
top	قمة

inside	بالداخل
suddenly	فجأة
gold coins	عملات ذهبية
as soon as	بمجرد
axe	فأس
anymore	لم يعد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
climb يتسلق	climbed	sell يبيع	sold
count يعد	counted	say يقول	said
cry يصيح / يصرخ	cried	get يحصل على	got
save ينقذ	saved	meet يقابل	met
reach يصل إلى	reached	buy يشترى	bought
grab يمسك بـ / ينتزع	grabbed	throw يرمى	threw
chop يقطع	chopped	see يرى	saw
		fall يسقط	fell

Definitions تعريفات

giant عملاق	a very, very big person
grab يمسك بـ / ينتزع	to pick something up quickly
castle قلعة	a very large building built a long time ago
chop يقطع	to cut something down
cage قفص	a box in which we keep animals

Study the following

1. Jack and his mother were very poor. كان جاك ووالدته فقراء للغاية.
2. On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. التقى جاك برجل عجوز في الطريق إلى السوق.
3. I have these special beans. لدي هذه الفاصوليا المميزة.
4. They will make you rich! سوف تجعلك غنيا!
5. He was sad and very hungry. كان حزينًا وجائعًا جدًا.
6. The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. في صباح اليوم التالي، رأى جاك شجرة (ساق) فاصوليا طويلة جدًا في الحديقة.
7. At the very top, he saw a castle. رأى قلعة في القمة.
8. Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant. فجأة، رأى جاك عملاقًا كبيرًا جدًا.
9. He was counting bags of gold coins. كان يعد أكياس عملات ذهبية.
10. As soon as Jack reached his garden, he grabbed his axe. بمجرد أن وصل جاك إلى حديقته، أمسك بفأسه.
11. The giant fell on the ground and ran away. سقط العملاق على الأرض وهرب.
12. Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. لم يعد جاك ووالدته فقراء بعد الآن.
13. They sold the golden eggs to buy food. باعوا البيض الذهبي لشراء الطعام.
14. Jack and his mother lived happily ever after. عاش جاك ووالدته في سعادة دائمة.

1 Listen and read. What did Jack get for his cow?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا حصل جاك مقابل بيع بقرته؟


استمع إلى النص:



Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow," said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!"



On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them? They will make you rich!" said the man.



Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans !" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry , Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

4



The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. It went all the way up to the clouds. Jack climbed the beanstalk. At the very top, he saw a **castle**. Jack went inside to see if anyone needed help.

5



Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant. He was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the table. The hen was in a **cage**. Next to the hen was a golden egg.

6



The hen looked very sad. It was a magic hen, and it could talk! "Help me, please," cried the hen. "Save me from this terrible giant!"

7

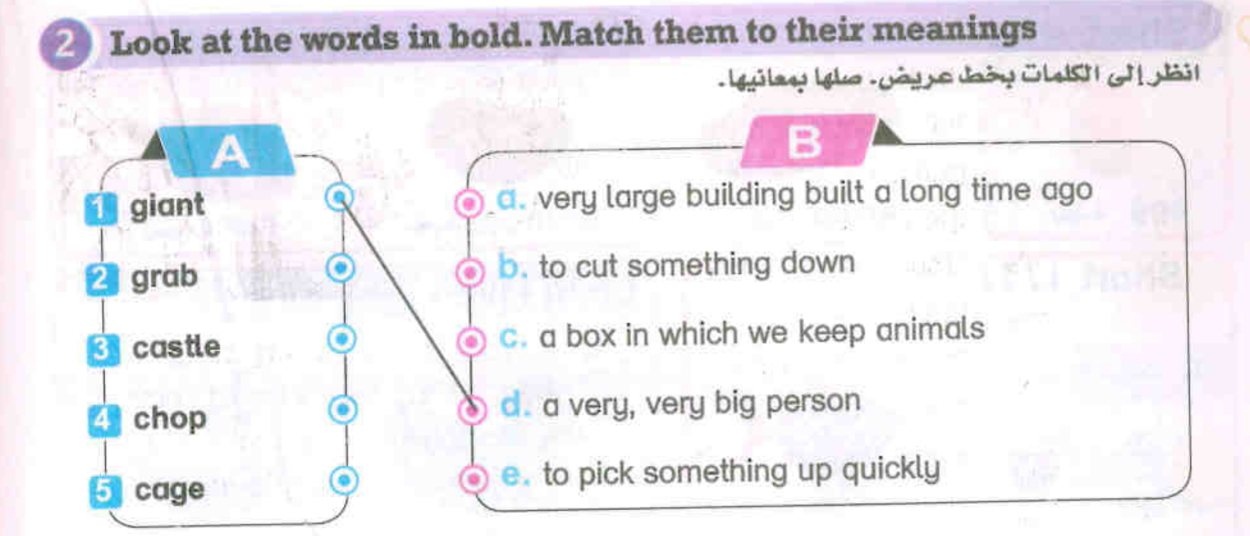


As soon as Jack reached his garden, he **grabbed** his axe. He **chopped** down the beanstalk. The giant fell on the ground and ran away. The hen was happy! It was free at last!

8



"Thank you for helping me, Jack. You are a kind boy. Can I please stay with you and your mother?"
Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. They sold the golden eggs to buy food. Jack and his mother lived happily ever after.



2 Look at the words in bold. Match them to their meanings

انظر إلى الكلمات بخط عريض. صلها بمعانيها.

A	B
1 giant	a. very large building built a long time ago
2 grab	b. to cut something down
3 castle	c. a box in which we keep animals
4 chop	d. a very, very big person
5 cage	e. to pick something up quickly

Pronunciation



Short vowels

Short a / æ /

cat قطة
candy حلوى
mango مانجو

Long vowels

Long a [a-e / ai / ay] /eI/

cake تورتة
grape حبة عنب
snake ثعبان
snail حلزون
rain مطر
tail ذيل
pain ألم
gray رمادي
play يلعب
say يقول
stay يبقى / يقيم

Unit 1 We plant our food

Short e / e /



egg بيضة — bread خبز

Long e [ee - ea] /i:/



bean حبة فول — meat لحم

Short i / I /



milk لبن — fish سمك

Long i [i-e - igh] /ai/



lime ليمون أخضر — rice أرز



- هناك كلمات تشترك فى أحد الأصوات وتختلف فى الحروف.

cake → bake rain → pain snail → tail

bean → meat gray → stay

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. c a ke
2. l _me
3. b_ _n
4. gr_pe
5. _gg
6. m_lk
7. r_ce
8. c_ndy

2 Say. Then circle the odd one out: قل ثم ضع دائرة على الكلمة المختلفة:

1. (grape) egg bread
2. mango egg candy
3. fish meat bean
4. lime rice cake

3 Read. Then listen and complete: اقرأ ثم استمع واكمل:





استمع إلى النص:

Some words sound the same but have different spellings.

cake	a_e	snake
rain	ai	pain
gray	ay	stay

1. I s _ _ _, 'Let's pl _ _ !'
2. Let's b _ ke a c _ ke.
3. Sn _ _ ls have t _ _ ls.

4 Write three sentences with the words in Exercise 3:

أكتب ثلاثة جمل باستخدام الكلمات التى فى التمرين ٣.

1. --
2. --
3. --



Math

Decimal Fractions الكسور العشرية

- درسنا فيما سبق الكسر حيث يتكون من بسط ومقام.

numerator ← 1 بسط

6 → denominator مقام

- حيث إذا كان لدينا 4 تفاحات ونريد تقسيمها على ولدان (2) فإن رقم (4) هو البسط ورقم (2) هو المقام.

- $\frac{4}{2} = 2$ إذا نصيب كل ولد 2 تفاحة وهذا عدد صحيح.

- لكن إذا كان لدينا تفاحتين (2) وأردنا قسمتها على (4) أولاد:-

- $\frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$ أى أن نصيب كل ولد نصف تفاحة وهذا يمثل كسر وليس عدد صحيح.

- أما الكسر العشرى فيبدأ برقم ثم علامة عشرية ثم باقى الرقم (32.50 / 1.70 / 0.40 / 0.30)

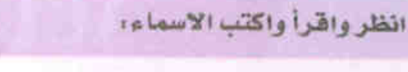
1 Look, read, and remember decimal fractions:

انظر واقرأ وتذكر الكسور العشرية:

- يمكن كتابة الكسر على شكل كسر عشرى كما يلى:

$\frac{1}{5} = 0.20$ $\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$ $\frac{1}{3} = 0.333$

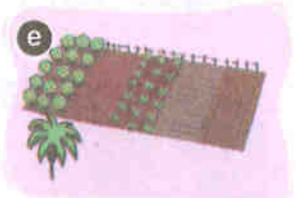
$\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$ $\frac{2}{5} = 0.40$



2 Look, read and write the names: انظر واقرأ واكتب الأسماء:

a  b c 

$\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$ ------------ ------------

d  e  f 

------------ ------------ ------------

1 Walaa planted $\frac{1}{3}$ of her field.
2 Amir planted $\frac{1}{2}$ of his field.
3 Tarek planted $\frac{1}{4}$ of his field.
4 Lubna planted $\frac{1}{5}$ of her field.
5 Sherif planted $\frac{3}{4}$ of his field.
6 Manar planted $\frac{2}{5}$ of her field.

3 Think and write: فكر واكتب:

Did you know?
0.4 = 0.40 = 0.400

1 $\frac{1}{3}$ = 1÷3 = 0.333
2 $\frac{1}{2}$ = ------ = ------
3 $\frac{1}{4}$ = ------ = ------
4 $\frac{1}{5}$ = ------ = ------
5 $\frac{3}{4}$ = ------ = ------
6 $\frac{2}{5}$ = ------ = ------



Activities



1 Match: صل:

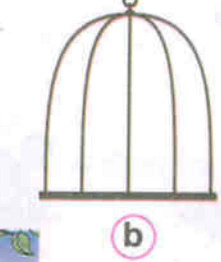


A		B
1 castle	•	a
2 giant	•	b
3 cage	•	c
4 chop	•	d
5 candy	•	e















2 Circle the odd one out: ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1	cake	grape	rice	rain
2	stay	axe	grab	throw
3	poor	rich	angry	mango
4	bean	climb	sell	fall

3 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Jack saw a very big person. He was a ....

   a giant b cage c grape

2. The bird was inside the ....

   a ring b book c cage

3. Let's .... a cake.

   a throw b cry c bake

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4. Dogs and cats have ....

   a beaks b tails c feather

5. A .... is a very large building built a long time ago.

   a castle b car c tree

6. I always help my mother .... the vegetables.

   a climb b meet c chop

4 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

rich - cage - poor

Jack and his mother didn't have money. They were ❶ .... Jack saw a hen in a ❷ .... Next to the hen was a golden egg. Jack took the hen and sold the golden eggs. He was ❸ .... at the end.

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. his mother - were - Jack - very - and - poor.

   ----

2. saw - Jack - giant - big - a very

   ----

3. was counting - gold - He - coins - bags - of.

   ----

4. the golden - They - eggs - sold - food - to buy.

   ----

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

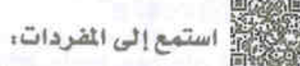
1. what did jack get for his cow

   ----

2. let s play

Lesson 5 ★ Writing

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:





stuffed محشو . weigh out يزن المقادير mix يخلط pour يصب/يسكب






butter زبد bake يخبز boil يغلي cut يقطع

Other words كلمات أخرى

basbousa	بسبوسة
recipe	وصفة طعام
ingredients	مكونات الطعام
semolina	سميد
yogurt	زبادي
sugar	سكر
melted butter	زبدة مذابة
baking powder	مسحوق الخبز
coconut	جوز هند
almonds	لوز
teaspoon = tsp	ملعقة شاي

syrup	شراب (سائل محلى)
a tablespoon = tbsp	ملعقة طعام
lentil soup	حساء عدس
stuffed vegetables	محشي
oven	فرن
by hand	باليد
mixture	خليط
knife	سكين
diamond shape	شكل ماسي
pretty	جميل
lemon juice	عصير ليمون
saucepan	طاسة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
cook	يطهو	cooked
bake	يخبز	baked
turn on	يشغل	turned on
weigh out	يزن المقادير	weighed out
mix	يخلط	mixed
add	يضيف	added
pour	يصب / يسكب	poured
boil	يغلي	boiled
share	يشارك	shared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
put	يضع	put
make	يصنع	made
take out	يخرج	took out
cut	يقطع	cut

Study the following

1. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. افضل شئ احب خبزه هو البسبوسة.
2. First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. أولاً ، تحتاج إلى تشغيل الفرن لتسخينه.
3. You should mix these ingredients by hand. يجب عليك خلط هذه المكونات باليد.
4. Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. ثم تضيف الزبادي وتسكب المزيج في طبق للخبز.
5. You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. يمكنك استخدام السكين لعمل أشكال على شكل ماسة فوق البسبوسة.
6. Put an almond on each diamond. ضع حبة لوز على كل ماسة.
7. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes. اخبز البسبوسة في الفرن لمدة 30 دقيقة.
8. Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes. اغلي المزيج لمدة 10 دقائق.
9. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. ثم نصب الشراب على البسبوسة.
10. Cut the basbousa and share it with your family! قطع البسبوسة وشاركها مع عائلتك!

1 Look and read. What is the recipe for?:

انظر واقرأ. عن ماذا تتحدث وصفة الطعام؟

استمع إلى المفردات:





INGREDIENTS

2 cups semolina

1 cup yogurt

$\frac{1}{3}$ cup sugar

$\frac{1}{2}$ cup melted butter

1 tsp baking powder

1 cup coconut

almonds

Syrup

$\frac{3}{4}$ cup water

2 tbsp honey

My favorite recipe

We cook lots of different things, such as lentil soup, ful medames, and stuffed vegetables. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it.

First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this!

Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish.

You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa.

Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

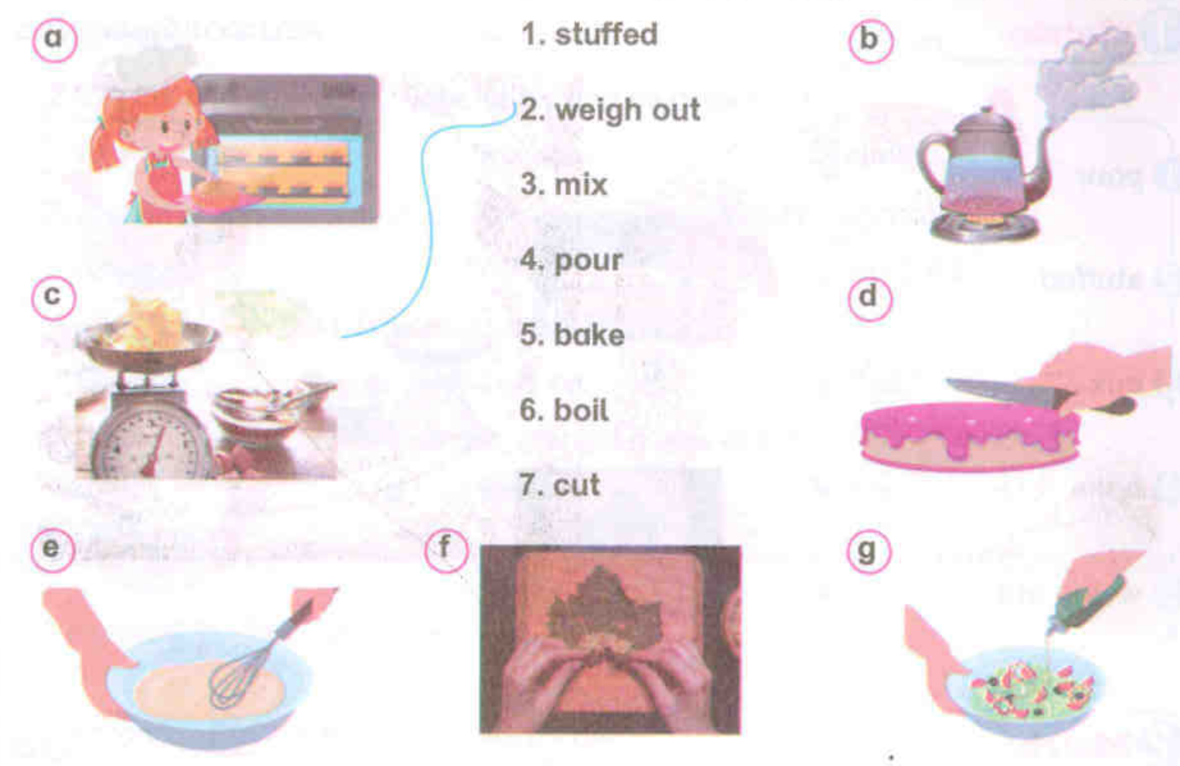
Make the syrup. Put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan.

Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes.

Take it out of the oven. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. Cut the basbousa and share it with your family!

2 Look at the words in bold in the text. Match them to their meanings

انظر إلى الكلمات المظللة بخط عريض. صلها بمعانيها.



a b c d e f g

1. stuffed
2. weigh out
3. mix
4. pour
5. bake
6. boil
7. cut

3 Choose a dish you want to make. Write the ingredients. Then write the recipe. Write 30–40 words

اختر الطبق الذى تريد عمله. اكتب المكونات. ثم أكتب وصفة الطعام. اكتب من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠ كلمة:

INGREDIENTS	Recipe
rice	------------------------------
lentils	------------------------------
onions	------------------------------
------------	------------------------------
------------	------------------------------
------------	------------------------------



Activities

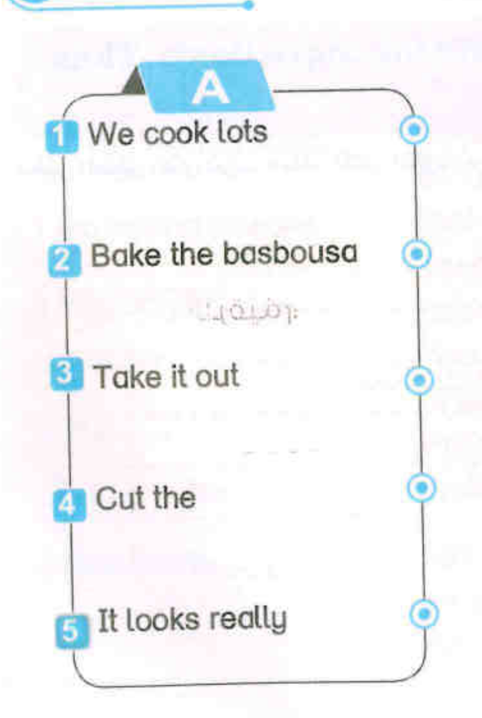
1 Match:

صل بالصورة الصحيحة:



2 Match:

صل:



A	B
1 We cook lots	a. pretty.
2 Bake the basbousa	b. of the oven.
3 Take it out	c. of different things.
4 Cut the	d. for 3 minutes.
5 It looks really	e. basbausa and share it.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I want to .... basbousa.
   a bake b boil c turn on
2. We have .... vegetables and meat for lunch.
   a poured b weighed c stuffed
3. Mona.................... out the ingredients. They were one kilogram.
   a boiled b cut c weighed
4. .... the mixture into a baking dish.
   a Pour b Turn on c Read
5. If you .... two colors, you get a new one.
   a boil b weigh c mix

4 Read and reorder the following to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. ingredients - the - Mix - hand - by.

----

2. almond - Put - diamond - on each - an

----

3. the mixture - for - minutes - Boil - about - 10.

----

4. your - on - hot - Turn - oven - to get - it.

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم:

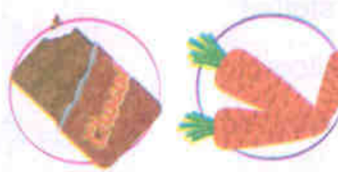
1- we cook lentil soup ful medames and stuffed vegetables

2- what is the recipe for, fatma



Review

food الطعام







chocolate	carrots	lemons	limes	beans	pineapples
شيكولاتة	جزر	ليمون أصفر	ليمون أخضر	فول	أناناس








cookies	coconuts	onions	chickpeas	mangoes	koshari
كعك محلى	جوز الهند	بصل	حمص	مانجو	كشرى

Jack and the Beanstalk








beanstalk	castle	giant	chop	cage	grab
ساق الفاصوليا	قلعة	عملاق	يقطع	قفص	يمسك

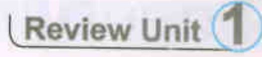
Writing








stuffed	weigh out	mix	boil	pour	bake
محشو	يزن المقادير	يخلط	يغلى	يصب/يسكب	يخبز




Food chain





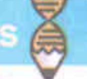


caterpillar	beetle	lizard	eagle	fungi
يرقة	خنفساء	سحلية	عقاب	فطر

ingredients	مكونات الطعام
legumes	بقوليات
digestive system	الجهاز الهضمى
food chain	السلسلة الغذائية
energy	طاقة
producers	منتجون

consumers	مستهلكون
primary consumer	مستهلك أساسى
secondary consumer	مستهلك ثانوى
tertiary consumer	مستهلك من الدرجة الثالثة
decomposers	كائنات محللة (المحللات)
ecosystem	النظام البيئى

Adjectives صفات



poor	فقير
rich	غنى
special	خاص / مميز
angry	غاضب
golden	ذهبى

magic	سحر / سحرى
terrible	فظيع
free	حر / طليق
kind	عطوف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
water	يسقى الزرع	watered
turn	يحول /يتحول	turned
harvest	يحصد	harvested
unpack	يفرغ	unpacked
climb	يتسلق	climbed
count	يعد	counted
cry	يصيح / يصرخ	cried
grab	يمسك بـ / ينتزع	grabbed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
have/has	يملك	had
eat	يأكل	ate
grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew
sell	يبيع	sold
buy	يشترى	bought
give back	يعيد	gave back
show	يظهر / يبين	showed
meet	يقابل	met

Present مضارع		Past ماض
chop	يقطع	chopped
bake	يخبز	baked
turn on	يشغل	turned on
weigh out	يزن المقادير	weighed out
mix	يخلط	mixed
pour	يصب / يسكب	poured
boil	يغلى	boiled

Present مضارع		Past ماض
throw	يرمى	threw
fall	يسقط	fell
cut	يقطع	cut

Pronunciation

Short vowels

Long vowels

Short a / æ /




cat قطة — candy حلوى

Long a [a-e / ai / ay] /eI/





cake تورتة — grape حبة عنب — snake ثعبان — snail حلزون

Short e / e /




egg بيضة — bread خبز

Long e [ee - ea] /i:/




bean حبة فول — meat لحم

Short i / I /




milk لبن — fish سمك

Long i [i-e - igh] /ai/




lime ليمون أخضر — rice أرز



Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 نستخدم للإقتراح

How about + V + ing..........?

- How about buying carrots?

Let's + inf.

- Let's buy a bottle of milk.

2 للسؤال بمعنى هل يوجد؟

Are there + اسم جمع....?
Is there + اسم مفرد / اسم لا يعد....?

- Are there any apples?
- Yes, there are. — إجابة فى الإثبات:
- No, there aren't. — إجابة فى النفى:

Language Focus قواعد لغوية

a / an

- نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بحرف ساكن وتعنى واحدة من هذا الاسم.

- a mango ثمرة مانجو — a carrot جزرة

- نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يبدأ بحرف متحرك وتعنى واحدة من هذا الاسم.
- الحروف المتحركة:

a - e - i - o - u

- an onion — an apple

some / any

- تستخدم كلمة some بمعنى (بعض) فى الجملة المثبتة. ويأتى بعد some اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.
- I would like some oranges, please.
- وتستخدم any بمعنى (أى) فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال . ويأتى بعد any اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.
- Is there any milk?
- We haven't got any nuts.



مهارات الكتابة

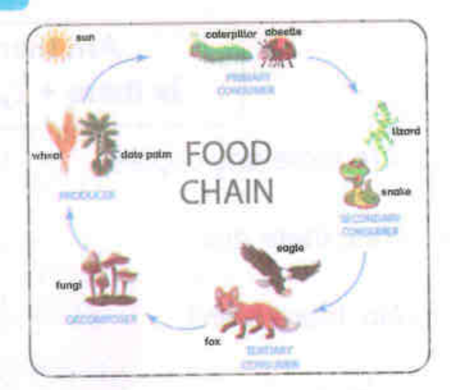
Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 2

The food chain

1. The food chain starts with plants. It ends with decomposers. Plants and trees are called producers. Animals are called consumers. Decomposers give nutrients back to the ecosystem.



Lesson 3

Healthy & unhealthy food

2. I like healthy food. Fruit and vegetables are healthy. Bananas and pineapples are my favorite. I don't like unhealthy food. I have chocolate once a week because it isn't very healthy.



Activity 1

My favorite food

3. My favorite food is fish. It is a delicious meal. I think it is healthy. I like it with rice and salad. I eat it a lot.



Azhar Exercises



الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose: استمع واختر:

1. Ibrahim and his mom buy .... (apple - tomatoes - vegetables)
2. In the morning, I like to drink .... (water - tea - milk)

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل:

lots - any - carrots

A : Hello, what would you like?
B : I would like some --.
A : Are there ---------- tomatoes?
B : Yes, there are ------------ of tomatoes.

B- Reading

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Marwa is my sister. She is twenty years old. Marwa bought some chickpeas and other ingredients at the market to make a delicious meal.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Marwa is my .... (aunt - sister - mother)
2. Marwa is .... (15 - 20 - 30)
3. She bought some .... (apples - nuts - chickpeas)

C- The Reader

4 Read and write (True) or (False): اقرأ واكتب صح أم خطأ:

	True	False
1. Dad cooked Amir's favorite dish, molokhia and chicken.		
2. Amir doesn't like Mom's molokhia.		

5 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. I would .... an orange.
   a like b likes c liked
2. Ahmed's favorite dessert is ....
   a milk b water c chocolate

ON UNIT 1

Activity



1 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Would you like .... orange?
   a a   b an   c some
2. The sun provides .... for plants to grow.
   a energy   b air   c water
3. Is there .... juice?
   a some   b any   c an
4. How about .... an apple, mom?
   a buy   b buys   c buying
5. Magdy uses .... to make koshari.
   a seeds   b cookies   c chickpeas

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل

A	B
1 What would	a. producers.
2 We don't have	b. going to the club?
3 Plants are called	c. you like?
4 Animals are called	d. any grapes.
5 How about	e. consumers.

3 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Adel. I'm twelve years old. I live in Fayoum. My father is a farmer. He grows mangoes. He grows tomatoes and potatoes too. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes. We can make delicious mango juice. We can also make fruit salad and mango cakes. Mangoes are healthy food.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

1. Adel is .... years old.
   a 12   b 11   c 10
2. Adel's father is a ....
   a doctor   b teacher   c farmer

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Adel live? ------------------------------
4. Are mangoes healthy food? ------------------------------

4 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

digestive - ingredient - healthy

My uncle grows chickpeas. Chickpeas are important ❶ .... in many recipes such as koshari and hummus. Chickpeas are a ❷ .... food. They can help to keep your ❸ .... system working properly.

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. a mango - have - We - garden - tree - in the. ------------------------------
2. Are - tomatoes - any - there? ------------------------------
3. ground - grow - on - Pineapples - the. ------------------------------
4. is - for - What - the recipe? ------------------------------

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

My favorite food

favorite - fish - delicious - healthy - rice

----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- ahmed doesn t have any grapes

2- what would you like to eat, nabil

Theme 1

Unit 2

I discover myself

I want to be healthy!

أريد أن اتمتع بصحة جيدة







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about sports.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الرياضات.
2. Talk about sports I'm good at or bad at.
   - يتحدث الطالب عن الرياضات قائلا انا جيد فى أو انا سيئ فى.
3. Read and listen to a science fiction story.
   - يقرأ ويستمع الطالب إلى قصة خيال علمي.
4. Learn how to say single-syllable words.
   - يتعلم الطالب كيف ينطق كلمات ذات مقطع صوتى واحد.
5. Write a biography about a famous Egyptian sportsperson.
   - يكتب الطالب سيرة ذاتية عن شخصية رياضية مصرية مشهورة.
6. Give a presentation about how to help his / her local environment.
   - يقدم الطالب عرضاً تقديمياً عن مساعدة بيئته المحلية.



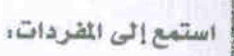


LESSON 1

★ Sports



Key vocabulary





استمع إلى المفردات:



squash الاسكواش



tennis التنس

football كرة القدم



karate الكاراتيه



kung fu رياضة الكونج فو

SPORTS الألعاب الرياضية



swimming السباحة





sailing الابحار



handball كرة اليد

club	نادي
look fun	يبدو ممتعاً

awesome	رائع / مذهل
on TV	في التليفزيون

Adjectives صفات



good at	جيد في
bad at	سيئ في
better at	افضل في

worse at	اسوأ في
great	عظيم
favorite	مفضل

Help your child learn about sports. ساعد طفلك يتعلم مفردات عن الرياضات.

Unit 2 I want to be healthy!

Other words كلمات أخرى

Me too!	وأنا أيضاً
What about ....?	ماذا عن؟
What time ?	ما الوقت؟
sport	رياضة
most popular	الأكثر شهرة
like	مثل
game	مباراة / لعبة
later	فيما بعد / لاحقاً
match	مباراة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
agree	يوافق	agreed
play	يلعب	played
try	يجرب	tried
watch	يشاهد	watched

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
am / is / are	يكون	was / were
win	يفوز	won

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 لموافقة فيما قال المتحدث:

- Me too! وأنا أيضاً!
- So do I. وأنا كذلك.

2 لوداع شخص نستخدم:

- See you in the club. أراك في النادي.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

لاحظ التالي عند المقارنة:

good ➜ better than ➜ the best
جيد ➜ أفضل من ➜ الأفضل

- I'm good at football but I'm better at squash.

bad ➜ worse than ➜ the worst
سئ ➜ أسوأ من ➜ الأسوأ

- I'm bad at karate but I'm worse at kung fu.

Study the following

1. What are you watching? - ماذا تشاهد؟
2. I love squash! - أحب الإسكواش.
3. Who is winning? - من في طريقه للفوز؟
4. She is very good at playing squash. - إنها جيدة جداً في لعبة الاسكواش.
5. What sport are you good at? - ما هي الرياضة التي تجيدها؟
6. Let's go to the club later. - هيا نذهب الى النادي لاحقاً.
7. My favorites are swimming and sailing. - الرياضات المفضلة لدي هي السباحة والإبحار.
8. See you in the club later! - أراك لاحقاً في النادي.
9. What is most popular sport in Egypt? - ما اكثر رياضة مشهورة في مصر؟

1 **Listen and read. Number the sports in the photos in the order Seleem and Wael talk about them:** استمع واقرأ ورقم الرياضات في الصور طبقاً لذكرها في النص:

Tapescript نص الاستماع — استمع إلى النص:

Seleem: What are you watching?
Wael : An old match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini – it's great. I love squash!
Seleem: Me too! Who's winning?
Wael : Raneem – she's very good at playing squash.
Seleem: I know. What sport are you good at?
Wael : I'm very good at playing tennis, but I'm bad at playing handball. What about you?
Seleem: I'm good at playing squash, but I'm bad at playing tennis. I love football too.
Wael : So do I, but I'm better at tennis than I am at football. Let's go and play a game of football.
Seleem: Yes, let's go to the club later.
Wael : Yes! And what other sports do you watch on TV?
Seleem: I love watching karate and kung fu. And you?
Wael : My favorites are swimming and sailing. Sailing looks fun!
Seleem: Great! So what time do you want to play football?
Wael : About five?
Seleem: Awesome – see you in the club later!

a karate ☐



b squash 1



c sailing ☐



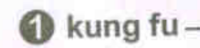
d kung fu ☐

2 Listen again and circle the correct words:
استمع مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Seleem / Wael is watching a squash match.
2. Seleem and Wael **like / don't like** sport.
3. Wael is **worse / better** at football than he is at tennis.
4. They agree to play **squash / football** later.

3 Look and match:
انظر وصل:

a 



b 

c 

d 

e 

f 

g 

h 

1. kung fu
2. tennis
3. sailing
4. swimming
5. squash
6. karate
7. football
8. handball

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

This is bubble football. There are lots of unusual sports you can try. They're fun, and they can keep you healthy!

هذه كرة قدم الفقاعات. يمكنك أن تجرب العديد من الرياضات الغريبة. إنها ممتعة ويمكنها ان تحافظ على صحتك.





1 Read and complete the dialog with the following words:
اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة بالكلمات الآتية:

playing - great - too

Saleem: What are you watching?

Wael : An old match between Ali and Adel, it's (1) .... I love squash!

Saleem: Me (2) .... ! Who's winning?

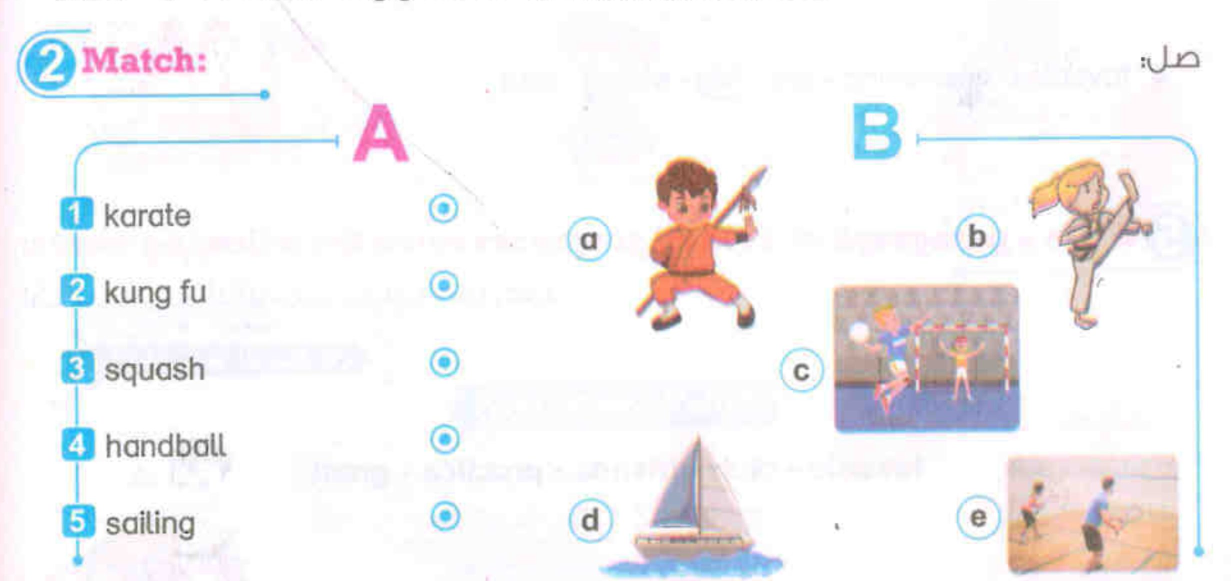
Wael : Ali. He's very good at (3) .... squash.

2 Match:
صل:

A

1. karate
2. kung fu
3. squash
4. handball
5. sailing

B



3 Choose the right answer from a, b or c:
اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. What are you .... ?
   a watch b watches c watching
2. What sport are you good ....?
   a on b at c up
3. She is bad at handball but she is .... at tennis.
   a worse b taller c older
4. I love sailing. It .... fun.
   a sees b looks c hears

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. bad - playing - I'm - at - tennis.

---

2. watching - you - What - are?

---

3. go - Let's - club - to - later - the.

---

4. favorites - swimming - are - My - sailing - and.

---

5 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



Your favorite sport

favorite - club - friends - practice - great



---

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. seleem and wael like sport

---

2. what sports do we have in egypt

Lesson 2 ★ I'm good at ...

استمع إلى المفردات:



climb trees
يتسلق الأشجار



jump
يقفز



do jigsaws
يقوم بتركيب الصور المقطعة



walk across the desert
يمشي عبر الصحراء





cook
يطهو / يطبخ



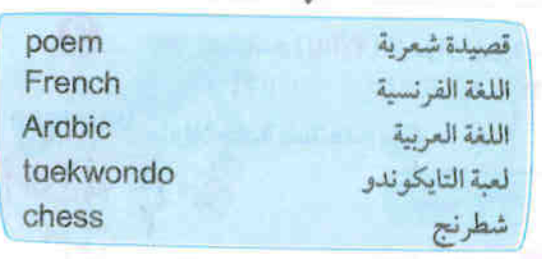
draw
يرسم



Other words كلمات أخرى

poem	قصيدة شعرية	do karate	يلعب الكاراتيه
French	اللغة الفرنسية	make dinner	يُعد طعام العشاء
Arabic	اللغة العربية	singing	الغناء
taekwondo	لعبة التايكوندو	team	فريق
chess	شطرنج	table tennis	تنس الطاولة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال



Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
climb	يتسلق	climbed
cook	يطهو	cooked
walk	يمشي	walked
jump	يقفز	jumped
practice	يمارس	practiced
tidy	يرتب	tidied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
do	يفعل / يمارس	did
draw	يرسم	drew
read	يقرأ	read
make	يُعد (طعام)	made
sing	يغني	sang
write	يكتب	wrote
speak	يتحدث	spoke

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 good at/ great at/ bad at

نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية في التحدث عن ما يجيد شخص ما فعله أو لا يجيد فعله :

good at جيد في
great at رائع في
bad at سيئ في
+ (V + ing) / (n) اسم

- I'm good at playing football / I'm good at football.

يمكن استخدام أي من الصيغتين (v + ing) أو الاسم (n).

- My sister is great at writing poems.
- They are bad at tennis.



لاحظ عند إضافة (ing) لفعل منتهي بـ (e) غير منطوقة تحذف (e) ونضع (ing)

make → making
write → writing

لكن لاحظ: لم يحذف حرف (e) لأنه منطوق.
see → seeing

2 because

نستخدم (Why) للسؤال عن السبب.

- Why are you good at table tennis?

وللإجابة نستخدم:



سبب → because → نتيجة

- I'm good at table tennis because I can move fast.

3 but & and

نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة أي أنها تضيف للمعنى:

- I play tennis and basketball.
- I like fruit and vegetables.

و نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

- The desert is very interesting, but it is very hot.
- I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.

1 Complete the sentences: اكمل الجمل:

1. I'm good at ....playing.... (play) football.
2. My sister is very good at .... (write) poems.
3. Sami's bad at .... (speak) French!
4. They're great at .... (help) their mom in the kitchen.

2 What are you good/great/bad at? Write three sentences about you in your notebook with the phrases in the box:

اكتب ثلاث جمل عن الأشياء التي تجيدها أو لا تجيدها بإستخدام الكلمات الآتية :

do - karate - draw - help - my - mom/dad
make - dinner - play - chess - play tennis - read

- I'm good at reading Arabic, but I'm bad at making dinner.

3 Look and write. Use good at, bad at, great at, and the phrases in the box:

انظر واكمل الجمل مستخدمًا الكلمات التالية :

~~climb trees~~ - cook - do jigsaws - draw - jump - walk across the desert

1 
2 
3 
4 
5 
6 

1. Monkeys ___ are good at climbing trees. ___________.
2. Cats ______________________________.
3. Camels ______________________________.
4. Mazen ______________________________.
5. Reem ______________________________.
6. Dad ______________________________.

4 **Look and listen. Match the people to what they are good or bad at. Write D (Dalia), A (Aser), or S (Salma)** اكتب D او A او S :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب — استمع إلى النص:

a [D] b [ ] c [ ] d [ ] e [ ] f [ ]

5 **Listen again, and complete the sentences:** استمع مرة اخرى واكمل الجمل:

1. Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm good .... playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball.
2. Aser is my brother. He's .... at playing tennis, and he's bad at .... me in the kitchen!
3. My sister's name is Salma. She's .... good at doing math. She's at tidying her room!

6 **Talk to your classmates. Find out which sport most people are ...:** تحدث مع زميلك:

1. good at. Why?
2. bad at. Why?

I'm good at table tennis because I can move fast. What sport are you good at?



I'm good at football because I practice a lot. What sport are you bad at?



Adding and subtracting decimals
جمع وطرح الأعداد العشرية

- عند جمع أو طرح الأعداد العشرية تعامل مع الرقم مثل الأعداد الكاملة (بدون علامة عشرية) ولكن اجعل العلامة العشرية في الرقمين سواء كان جمع أو طرح تحت بعضهما تماماً كما في المثال:

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.367 \\ +\ 8.145 \\ \hline 10.512 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 10.512 \\ -\ 8.145 \\ \hline 2.367 \end{array}$$

- يجب أن يتوافق موضع العلامة العشرية في الرقم الجديد مع وضعه في الأرقام الأصلية كما في المثال:

أولاً الجمع:

$$\begin{array}{r} 7.2 \\ +\ 2.4 \\ \hline 9.6 \end{array}$$

- إذا كان ناتج جمع ما بعد العلامة العشرية في كلا الرقمين أكبر من الواحد فيضاف إلى الرقم الذي يسبق العلامة العشرية كالآتي:

1

$$\begin{array}{r} 6.4 \\ +\ 2.7 \\ \hline 9.1 \end{array}$$

2



$$\begin{array}{r} 7.983 \\ +\ 5.432 \\ \hline 13.415 \end{array}$$

- لاحظ أنه بشكل عام عند الجمع أو الطرح نبدأ بآخر رقم في العدد الأول مع آخر رقم في العدد الثاني.

ثانياً الطرح: ادرس الأمثلة التالية جيداً:

3
$$\begin{array}{r} 8.5 \\ -\ 3.2 \\ \hline 5.3 \end{array}$$

4
$$\begin{array}{r} \overset{4}{1}\overset{10}{5}.\overset{13}{2}3 \\ -\ 11.46 \\ \hline 3.77 \end{array}$$

5
$$\begin{array}{r} 60.678 \\ -\ 50.356 \\ \hline 10.322 \end{array}$$

1 Circle the correct answers: ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. 7.983 + 5.432 = (13.415) / 134.15
2. 9.076 + 8.894 = 1.7970 / 17.970
3. 60.678 – 50.356 = 103.220 / 10.322
4. 129.675 – 6.231 = 123.444 / 12.3444

2 Solve the problems: حل المسائل الآتية:

1. If one tree is **3.459** meters tall and another tree is **2.753** meters tall, what is the difference in height between both trees?

....

2. Jihan ran **3.567** km on Sunday and **5.258** km on Tuesday. What is the total distance that Jihan ran? ....

3. Taher bought 2 watermelons. One weighs **2.657** kg and the other weighs **3.205** kg. Find:

a. the total weight of both watermelons.

....

b. the weight difference between the two watermelons.

....

Activities

1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. She is good at .... football.
   a. play b. plays c. playing
2. They are great .... helping their mom.
   a. at b. of c. on
3. I'm good at reading Arabic, ... I'm bad at making dinner.
   a. and b. but c. because
4. I'm good at table tennis .... I can move fast.
   a. or b. but c. because
5. Monkeys are good at .... trees.
   a. climb b. climbing c. climbs



2 Match: صل:

A	B
1. I'm good	a. handball.
2. I'm good at reading	b. great at walking across the desert.
3. What are	c. at playing tennis.
4. Camels are	d. you bad at?
5. She is good at	e. but I'm bad at doing jigsaws.

3 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

but - bad - helping

My sister Esraa is a good girl. She is good at ❶.................... her mom in the kitchen. She is very ❷.................... at making cakes, ❸.................... she's great at making shawerma.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Complete the sentences: أكمل الجمل:

1. He is great at .... (play) tennis.
2. Ali's bad .... (of) speaking French.
3. I'm good at .... (make) dinner.
4. They are bad at .... (do) karate.
5. I'm very good at football .... (because) I'm very bad at sailing.

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. are - Which - your - sports - favorites?

----

2. is - He - good - football - at.

----

3. are - bad - What - you - at?

----

4. bad - making - He - is - dinner - at.

----

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what about you, amr

----

2. they re good at tennis

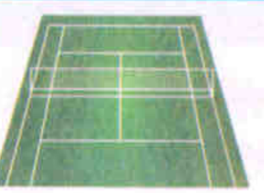
Lesson 3 ★ Sports places and equipment



استمع إلى المفردات:

football pitch
ملعب كرة القدم





tennis court
ملعب التنس



swimming pool
حمام السباحة

karate suit
بدلة الكاراتيه



football boots
حذاء كرة القدم



squash rackets
مضارب الاسكواش



swimming goggles
نظارة السباحة



tennis ball
كرة التنس

Other words كلمات أخرى



fast	سريع
really	حقاً
high kicks	ركلات عالية
moves	حركات
summer	الصيف
different	مختلف
walls	حوائط / جدران
go swimming	يذهب للسباحة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
kick	يركل	kicked
practice	يمارس	practiced
rhyme	يقفي / يسجع	rhymed

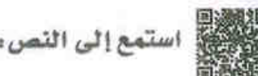
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
wear	يرتدي	wore
do	يفعل	did
go	يذهب	went

Study the following

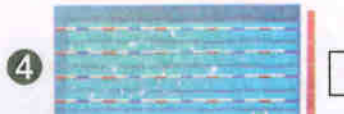
1. Kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.
   - الشئ المفضل بالنسبة لي هو ركل الكرة داخل ملعب كرة القدم.
2. I like high kicks best. - أفضل شئ أحبه هو الركلات العالية.
3. I love this sport because I'm very good at it. - احب هذه الرياضة لأنني اجيدها.
4. I think it's an awesome sport. - اعتقد انها رياضة رائعة.
5. I feel like a different person. - أشعر انني شخص مختلف.

1 Look and write. Then listen and check: انظر واكتب ثم استمع وتأكد:

استمع إلى النص: 



boots	court	tennis	goggles	karate	~~pitch~~	pool	rackets

1.  [A] football ....pitch....
2.  [ ] .... suit
3.  [ ] tennis ....
4.   [ ] swimming ....
5.   [ ] football ....
6.  [1] .... ball
7.  [ ] squash ....
8.  [ ] swimming ....

2 Listen and match the speakers (A-E) to the photos in Exercise 1 (1-8). Some speakers match more than one photo

استمع وصل المتحدثين بالصور فى تمرين رقم (١).

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

Narrator: A

Boy 1: I love my sport – kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.

Narrator: B

Girl 1: Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me. I feel like a different person.

Narrator: C

Boy 2: I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high kicks best. My suit for this sport is white.

Narrator: D

Girl 2: I love this sport because I'm very good at it. You play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small racket and you move very fast. You get really hot too.

Narrator: E

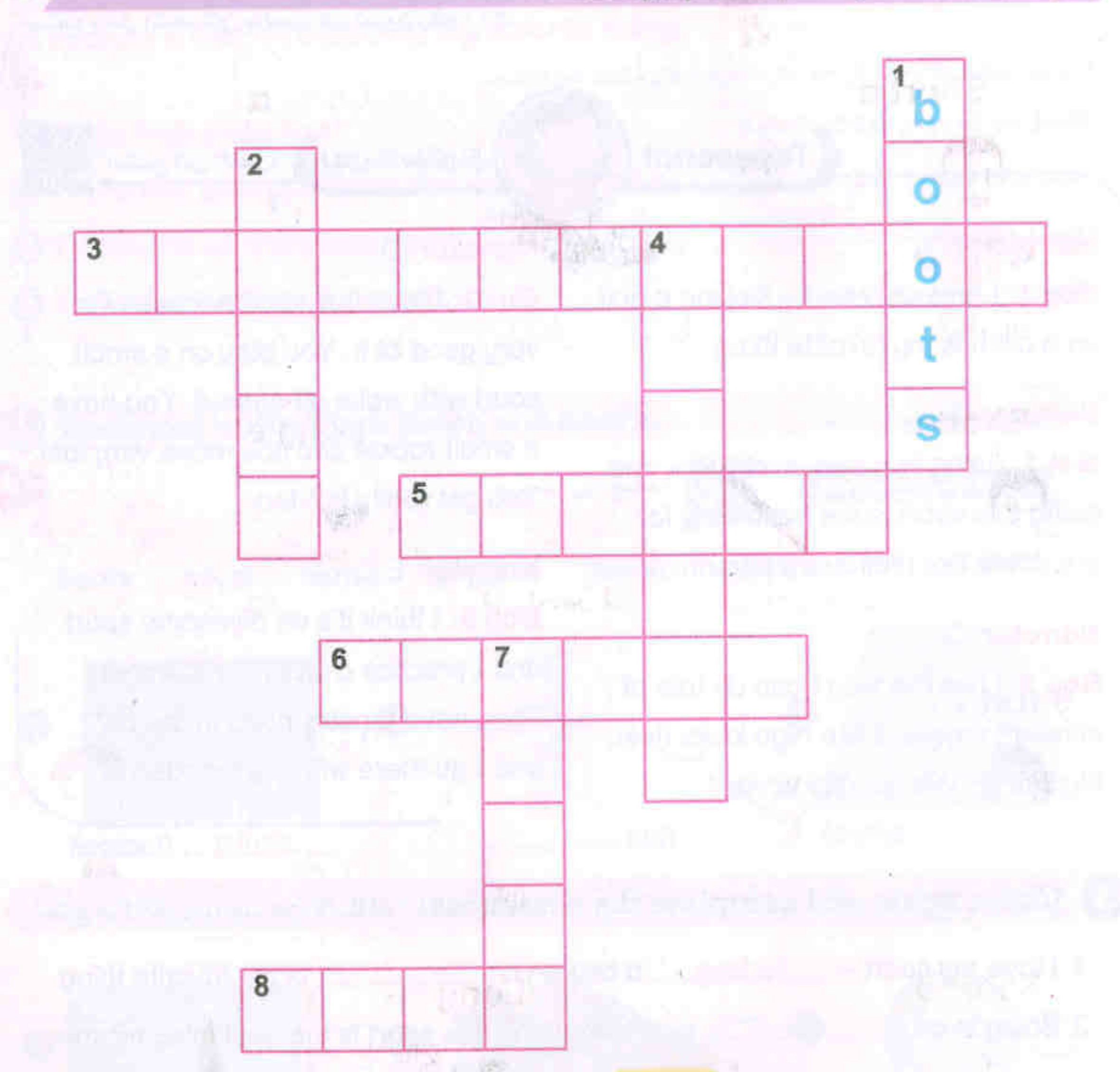
Boy 3: I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have tennis courts in the park and I go there with my friends.

3 Listen again and complete the sentences: استمع مرة أخرى واجب عن الأسئلة:

1. I love my sport – ....kicking........ a ball on a .... is my favorite thing.
2. Being in a .... pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me.
3. I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high .... best.
4. You have to play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small ...., and you move very fast.
5. I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have .... in the park and I go there with my friends.

4 Complete the crossword with the sports words:

اكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة بالكلمات المتعلقة بالرياضات:



Down

1. This is what I wear to play football.
2. This is where I play football.
4. This is what I wear to go swimming.
7. This is where I play tennis.

Across

3. This is where I go swimming.
5. This is when I do high kicks. It rhymes with "you" and " two."
6. This is what I use to play squash.
8. This is what I wear to do karate.



Short a



man رجل cat قطة bat خفاش

Long a



pain ألم make يعمل

Short e



neck رقبة pen قلم جاف red لون احمر

Long e



tea شاى feet اقدام

Short i



swim يعوم fish سمكة milk لبن

Long i



light ضوء cry يبكى

Short o



sock جورب doll عروسة لعبة

Long o



rose وردة cone مخروط / قمع

Short u



cup فنجان sun الشمس full ملئ

Long u



cube مكعب fuel وقود






teacher مُدرسة · robot انسان آلي · paper ورقة / ورق · spider عنكبوت

ندرس في هذا الدرس عدد الأصوات داخل الكلمات:

- تنقسم الأصوات في الكلمات على حسب الحروف المتحركة والساكنة داخل الكلمة مثل: sock
- تبدأ الكلمة بالصوت s ثم بعدها صوت حرف o المتحرك وحرفي ck معاً صوت واحد فتصبح الكلمة عبارة عن ثلاث أصوات.

fish كلمة ← f - i - sh ثلاثة أصوات

- الحروف المجمعة مع بعضها وتعطي صوتاً واحداً:

th	ث / ذ	this / tooth
sh	ش	fish
igh	long i	light
ch	تش	chair
ck	ك	sock

- أي حرفان مضاعفان لنفس الحرف ينطقا صوت واحد.

glass ← s صوت واحد · egg ← g صوت واحد

لاحظ

- كلمة successful هنا حرف c الأول ينطق مثل k لأنه جاء بعده حرف c والحرف c الثاني ينطق مثل حرف s لأن بعده حرف e.
- نطق حرف c مثل حرف s إذا جاء بعده y i e وينطق k مع باقي الحروف.
- إذا جاء حرف e في نهاية الكلمة وسبقه حرف ساكن لا ينطق مثل كلمة cone rose.
- لا ينطق حرف w وبعده حرف r مثل write.
- لا ينطق حرف n إذا جاء بعده k مثل know.

- ندرس أيضاً في هذا الدرس الأصوات المتحركة الطويلة والقصيرة في النطق مثل:

قصيرة النطق: cup pot sit egg hat

وتحتوي على حرف متحرك واحد غالباً

ممتدة النطق: two tea pain light rose

تحتوي على صوتين متحركين

Syllables المقاطع الصوتية

تتكون الكلمات في اللغة الانجليزية من مقاطع صوتية وكل مقطع صوتي يحتوي على صوت متحرك كما يلي:

Count the syllables.




١ كلمة chips تحتوي على مقطع صوتي واحد حيث بها صوت short i.
٢ كلمة chicken تحتوي على مقطعين صوتيين حيث بها صوتين متحركين.

لاحظ

١) إذا جاءت الحروف المتحركة معا دون فاصل فهي بذلك تعد مقطع صوتي واحد.
فمثلا كلمة meat بها حرفين متحركين (a / e) لكنهما لا يوجد بينهما فاصل إذا هما مقطع واحد.
٢) في كلمة make تنتهي الكلمة بحرف e لكنه هنا لا يعتبر صوت متحرك لأنه غير منطوق أصلاً.
٣) إذا جاءت (e) آخر الكلمة وكان قبلها حرف (L) فهنا تعد كمقطع صوتي كما في كلمة apple.
٤) لاحظ صوت حرف (y) يعد مقطع من المقاطع الصوتية فمثلاً كلمة city تحتوي على مقطعين صوتين.

1 Look and match. Then say: انظر وصل ثم قل:

A

1 sun
2 man
3 sock
4 pen
5 cat
6 red

B

a b c d e f

- How many sounds are there in these words?
There are three: e.g. **sock**: s-o-ck

2 Circle the three sounds in the words. Then write the words:
ضع دائرة حول الثلاث اصوات فى الكلمات الآتية. ثم اكتب الكلمات.

1. d i ll / t o f — doll
2. f u ll / t i sh — ....
3. f u r / k o ll — ....
4. n i ck / t e f — ....

3 Listen and say. Then listen and write: استمع وقل. ثم استمع واكتب:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب استمع إلى النص:

1 .... 2 .... 3 ....

4 .... 5 .... 6 ....

4 Listen and check (✓) the words with long vowel sounds
استمع وضع علامة (✓) على الكلمات التى بها اصوات متحركة ممتدة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب استمع إلى النص:

1 cry ☐ 2 swim ☐ 3 bat ☐
4 so ☐ 5 fuel ☐ 6 make ☐
7 cone ☐ 8 cube ☐ 9 feet ☐

5 Match the syllables to make words. Then listen and say
صل المقاطع الصوتية لتكوين كلمات. ثم استمع وقل:

1 spi — a per
2 tea — b bot
3 ro — c der
4 pa — d cher

6 Listen and write the number of syllables next to the words. Then say the words
استمع واكتب عدد المقاطع الصوتية بجوار الكلمة ثم قل الكلمة:

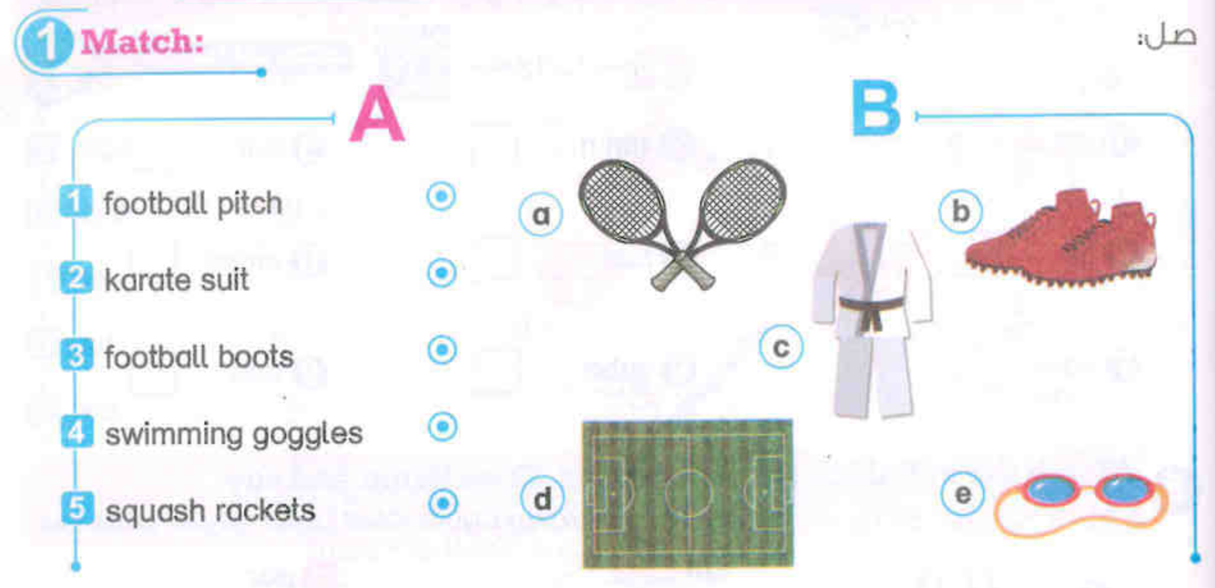
استمع إلى النص:

baby ☐	delete ☐	robot ☐	window ☐	racket ☐
human ☐	spider ☐	tiger ☐	paper ☐	final ☐
hotel ☐	music ☐	Egypt ☐	pollute ☐	teacher ☐

Activities



1 Match: صل:



A	B
1 football pitch	a
2 karate suit	b
3 football boots	c
4 swimming goggles	d
5 squash rackets	e

2 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

favorite kicking because

I love sports very much. I love ❶ .... a ball on a pitch. Football is my ❷ .... sport. I love this sport ❸ .... I'm very good at it.

3 How many sounds are there in these words:

اكتب عدد المقاطع الصوتية للكلمات الاتية كما بالمثال:

1 fish ....3..........	5 baby ....
2 neck	6 tiger ....
3 sun	7 paper ....
4 doll	8 robot ....

4 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. When I play football, I wear football ....
   a goggles b rackets c boots
2. I like squash very much. I play it with my ....
   a rocket b racket c goggles
3. I play tennis with rackets and tennis ....
   a goggles b balls c pitches
4. A football .... is a place where I play football.
   a shirt b house c pitch
5. I like to wear swimming .... when I go swimming.
   a rackets b goggles c balls
6. I wear a .... when I do karate.
   a boots b suit c racket

5 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

The swimming pool

مجاب اخر الوحدة

goggles - swimming pool - love - sports - weekend

----

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

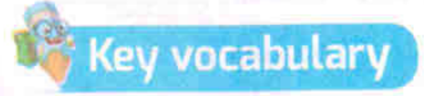
1. i practice football on friday

----

2. what s your favorite sport



LESSON 4 ★ An Awful Nightmare!



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



air	الهواء	shade	ظل
air freshener	معطر الهواء	greenhouse	صوبة زراعية
emissions	انبعاثات	nightmare	كابوس

Adjectives صفات



toxic	سام	awful	فظيع	asleep	نائم
dangerous	خطير	clean	نظيف	many	كثير (للعدد)
acid	حمضي	dirty	قذر - متسخ	much	كثير (للكمية)
horrible	مفزع				

Other words كلمات أخرى



smell better	له رائحة افضل	problem	مشكلة
traffic	حركة المرور / المركبات في حركة المرور	breathing	التنفس
lungs	الرئتان	work hard	يعمل بجد
plastic	بلاستيك	get ready	يستعد
dream	حلم	planet	كوكب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
breathe	يتنفس	breathed
stay	يمكث-يبقى	stayed
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after
protect	يحمي	protected
wait	ينتظر	waited
call	ينادي	called

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
drive	يقود	drove
cut down	يقطع	cut down
have to	يجب أن	had to
fall	يسقط	fell
keep	يحافظ على	kept

Language focus قواعد لغوية



1 too + adj

نستخدم too + الصفة للتحدث عن شئ أو صفة زائدة عن الحد بحيث لا يمكن تحملها .

- There are too many emissions from cars.

2 because of بسبب

نستخدم because of + n وبعدها الأسم لبيان السبب.

- I didn't go to school because of the bad weather.

Definitions تعريفات

toxic	سام	very bad to eat or breathe.
air freshener	معطر الهواء	a way of making the air smell cleaner.
emissions	انبعاثات	gases from cars or factories.
shade	ظل	out of the sun.
nightmare	كابوس	a bad dream.
greenhouse	صوبة زراعية	a glass building used for growing plants.
acid	حمضي	has chemicals in it.

Study the following

1. The air is black and toxic. - الهواء اسود وسام.
2. We use air freshener to make the air smell better. - نستخدم معطر الجو لنجعل رائحة الهواء افضل.
3. There are too many cars and too much traffic. - يوجد الكثير من السيارات والكثير من المركبات في حركة المرور.
4. There are too many emissions from cars. - يوجد الكثير من الانبعاثات الخارجة من السيارات.
5. It's dangerous for children's lungs. - هذا خطير على رئة الاطفال.
6. It was lovely to have rain after a very hot day. - من الممتع ان تمطر السماء بعد يوم حار.
7. The rain is acid and when it falls we can't go out. - المطر حمضي وعندما يسقط لا تستطيع الخروج.
8. We only have fruit from greenhouses. - نحصل على الفاكهة من الصوب الزراعية فقط.
9. It was an awful nightmare. - كان كابوس فظيع.
10. We can drive our car less, use our bike more. - نستطيع استخدام سياراتنا اقل ونستخدم الدراجات اكثر.

1 Listen and read: استمع و اقرأ.



Tapescript نص الاستماع استمع إلى النص:

I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and **toxic**(1). Inside the house we use **air fresheners** (2) to try to make the air smell better. We can't go outside – there are too many cars and too much traffic. There are too many **emissions**(3) from cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to the hospital because of problems with his **breathing**(4).







I remember when we could go to the park and play with our friends – the grass was green and the sky was blue. We could even see the sun. Now we can't see the sun any more because the sky is gray or black. In the old days, it was lovely to have rain after a very hot day, but now the rain is **acid**(5) and when it falls we can't go out. I remember going on holiday and playing on the beach with my family. We swam in the sea, but now we can't swim in the sea because there's too much plastic in it and it is dirty. Other things I remember are eating fruit from trees and sitting in their **shade**(6) on hot days. But now they cut down all the trees so we only have fruit from **greenhouses**(7) and we can't sit outside any more.

But wait, what's that? It's my mom calling and it's time to get ready for school! It was all **an awful nightmare**(8)! I look outside and the sky is blue and I can see the sun. We're going to the park today. But I remember my dream and I know in my heart we need to look after our planet. We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more, plant trees, and keep our sea clean, but we must work hard at this!



Arabic Meaning

١- سام
٢- معطر الهواء
٣- انبعاثات
٤- التنفس
٥- حمضي
٦- ظل
٧- صوب زراعية
٨- كابوس فظيع

2 Look at the words in bold. Match them to their meanings:

انظر إلي الكلمات بخط سميك. صل الكلمة بمعناها:

A	B
1 toxic	a. a bad dream
2 air freshener	b. gases from cars or factories
3 emissions	c. out of the sun
4 shade	d. a way of making the air smell cleaner
5 nightmare	e. very bad to eat or breathe
6 greenhouse	f. has chemicals in it
7 acid	g. a glass building used for growing plants



Activities

1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A greenhouse is	a. the air is black and toxic.
2 A nightmare	b. a way of making the air smell cleaner.
3 I sit under	c. the shade of this tree.
4 I can't breathe,	d. is a bad dream.
5 The air freshener is	e. a glass building used for growing plants.

2 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

practice **dirty** **plastic**

Every summer, we go to the beach and swim in the sea. Swimming is our favorite sport. We can't swim in the sea because there's too much (1)................ in it. It's (2)................ We want to (3)................ our sport.

3 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... is a bad dream.
   a nightmare b shade c planet
2. We can't go to school because .... the rain.
   a off b of c with
3. Emissions are .... from cars or factories.
   a glasses b gases c buildings
4. The child is .... in bed and has a bad dream.
   a asleep b dangerous c bad
5. I sit under the .... of this tree.
   a share b shade c shape
6. Cairo is a very busy city. It has too much ....
   a traffic b planets c suns

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. going - We're - to - today - the - park.

----

2. emissions - are - There - too - many.

----

3. planet - We - need - look after - to - our.

----

4. grass - The - was - green.

----

5. can't - We - go - outside.

----

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. what do you think of the story, adel

----

2. we can t sit outside any more



LESSONS 5&6 ★ Writing - A Sports Biography



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى النص:



champion	بطل	competitor	منافس – خصم
athlete	لاعب العاب - رياضي	the future	المستقبل
medal	ميدالية	award	جائزة – منحة
pollution	تلوث	water bodies	المسطحات المائية
biography	سيرة ذاتية (عن شخص)		

Other words كلمات أخرى



Paralympic Games	الألعاب الاوليمبية (لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة)	gold medal	ميدالية ذهبية
Olympic Games (Olympics)	الألعاب الاوليمبية	sportsperson	شخص رياضي
training	تدريب	achievement	انجاز
honor	فخر – شرف	special needs	احتياجات خاصة
prize	جائزة	taek wondo	رياضة التايكوندو
bronze medal	ميدالية برونزية	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
special moment	لحظة خاصة	at the age of....	في سن....
organisms	الكائنات الحية	practicing hard	يتدرب بجد
wastewater	مياه الصرف	flag	علم
		toilet	مرحاض (حمام)
		running water	المياه الجارية

Adjectives صفات



famous	مشهور	kind	عطوف	interesting	شيق
important	هام/ مهم	special	مميز/ خاص		
harmful	ضار	successful	ناجح		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
compete	يتنافس	competed
carry	يحمل	carried
kill	يقتل	killed
destroy	يُدمر	destroyed
cause	يسبب	caused
avoid	يتجنب	avoided

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
win	يفوز	won
can	يستطيع	could
become	يصبح	became
lose	يخسر	lost
hold	يحمل	held
throw	يرمى	threw

How to write a biography: كيف تكتب سيرة ذاتية:

- لكتابة السيرة الذاتية عن شخص رياضي (مثلاً) نستخدم بعض المصطلحات والعبارات للتعريف بالشخص الرياضي:

1- He / She was born on + تاريخ الميلاد.

2- He / She began .... بدأ.

3- He / She was the first .... كان أول شخص.

4- He / She is successful because .... يعتبر شخص ناجح لأنه.

5- He / She won .... فاز- فازت ب.

6- He / She also / Moreover / as well as/ ....

هو بالإضافة إلى / علاوة على ذلك / بالإضافة إلى ذلك.................

- وفيما يلى نموذج لسيرة ذاتية (Biography) عن شخص رياضي (Mohamed Salah)

Mohamed Salah is a famous football player. He was born on June 15, 1992. He began playing football when he was young. He is a successful sportsperson because he trained a lot to win awards. He also helps poor people in his village.

Study the following

1. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player.
   - هداية ملاك هى لاعبة تايكوندو مصرية مشهورة.
2. This is a great honor.
   - إنه فخر (شرف) عظيم.
3. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag in the Olympic Games.
   - هي واحدة من الاثنين اللذين حملا علم مصر في الألعاب الأوليمبية.
4. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven.
   - بدأت ممارسة رياضة التايكوندو وهي في السابعة من عمرها.
5. She won many important awards.
   - حصلت على جوائز عديدة.
6. She won the bronze medal.
   - حصلت على الميدالية البرونزية.
7. She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs.
   - ساعدت لاعبة مغربية من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة.
8. What does the future hold for Hedaya?
   - ماذا يحمل المستقبل لهداية؟
9. Water pollution can kill organisms.
   - يمكن لتلوث المياه أن يقتل الكائنات الحية.
10. Dirty water can make children and old people ill.
    - يمكن أن تجعل المياه الملوثة الأطفال وكبار السن مرضى.
11. Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.
    - لا تُلقى القمامة فى أو بالقرب من بحيرة أو شاطئ.

Unit 2 I want to be healthy!

1 Read and check: اقرأ وتأكد من إجابتك.


استمع إلى النص:



1. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian **taekwondo**[1] player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the **Tokyo Olympic Games**[2] in 2021. This is a great **honor**[3].
2. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. Hedaya won many important awards. She won the **bronze medal**[4] at the **Rio Olympics**[5] in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.
3. Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016 she helped **a Moroccan athlete**[6] with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to **compete**[7] against, so Hedaya became her **competitor**[8] and lost. Raja could **therefore**[9] win the gold medal and it was a very special moment for her.
4. What does the future hold for Hedaya? She is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal!

Arabic Meaning

١- رياضة التايكوندو
٢- الألعاب الأوليمبية بطوكيو
٣- شرف / فخر
٤- ميدالية برونزية
٥- الألعاب الأوليمبية بريو
٦- رياضي مغربي
٧- ينافس
٨- منافس
٩- بعد ذلك

2 Read again and answer the questions استمع مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1. What is her sport? ______________________
2. Why is she important? ______________________
3. What's the most important award she won? ______________________
4. What does she want for the future? ______________________

3 Read again, and match the paragraphs (1-4) to the headings (a-d)

اقرأ مرة أخرى ثم صل الفقرات من (١-٤) بـ (a - d)

a. What Hedaya will do next [4]
b. Who the famous sportsperson is. [ ]
c. Something else she is famous for [ ]
d. Further information about her sport and her achievements [ ]

4 Write notes for a sports biography. Use phrases 1-6 to help you. Try to use the words in the box: اكتب نبذة عن سيرة ذاتية لشخص رياضي.

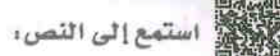
athlete - award - compete - future - medals - sports - training

Mohamed Salah was born on June 15, 1992. ______________________
____
____

5 Work in groups. Discuss and research:

اعمل فى مجموعات. ناقش وابحث:

How can we make our cities less polluted?
How can we make our air, water, and soil cleaner ?



استمع إلى النص:

Water pollution

When **harmful chemicals**[1] go into **water bodies**[2] like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill **organisms**[3] that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can **cause**[4] animals to lose their homes and change their **habitats**[5].




Causes[6]	Effects[7]	Solutions[8]
• Wastewater from sinks, **toilets**[9], and showers • Wastewater and chemicals from factories • Wastewater from **agricultural land**[10] and cities into rivers 	• Dirty water can make children and old people ill. • Polluted water **destroys**[11] wildlife in rivers.	• Save as much water as possible. • Take shorter showers. • **Avoid**[12] **running water**[13]. • Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

Arabic Meaning

١- مواد كيميائية ضارة
٢- مسطحات مائية
٣- كائنات حية
٤- يسبب
٥- بيئات
٦- الأسباب
٧- التأثيرات
٨- الحلول
٩- مراحيض
١٠- أراضٍ زراعية
١١- يدمر
١٢- يتجنب
١٣- المياه الجارية

Activities



1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hedaya Malak is a / an .... Egyptian taekwondo player.
   - a toxic
   - b famous
   - c angry
2. Hedaya .... born on April 21, 1993.
   - a were
   - b are
   - c was
3. She won many prizes .... the age of 14.
   - a at
   - b on
   - c of
4. Hedaya won the bronze ....
   - a metal
   - b medal
   - c racket
5. I play squash with Amr, Amr is my ....
   - a competitor
   - b award
   - c medal

2 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

won - prizes - taekwondo

Hedaya Malak was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing (1) .... at the age of seven and won many (2) .... at the age of 14. Hedaya (3) .... many important awards.

3 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. practicing - She - hard - is.

----

2. helped - a Moroccan - She - with - athlete - special needs.

----

3. is - kind - Hedaya - a very - person.

----

4. does - What - want - she - the - future - for?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



Hedaya Malak

was born - awards - future - training - medal

----

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. hedaya malak is a famous player

----

2. what s the most important award she won



Review

Sports


squash
الاسكواش


tennis
التنس


football
كرة القدم


karate
الكاراتيه

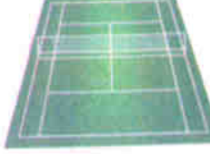

kung fu
الكونج فو

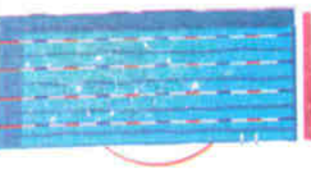

swimming
السباحة


sailing
الابحار


handball
كرة اليد


football pitch
ملعب كرة القدم



tennis court
ملعب التنس



swimming pool
حمام السباحة


karate suit
بدلة الكاراتيه


football boots
حذاء كرة القدم


squash rackets
مضارب الاسكواش


swimming goggles
نظارة السباحة


tennis ball
كرة التنس

Different activities


cook
يطهو / يطبخ



draw
يرسم


climb trees
يتسلق الأشجار



jump
يقفز


do jigsaws
يقوم بتركيب الصور المقطعة


walk across the desert
يمشي عبر الصحراء

air freshener	معطر الهواء
emissions	انبعاثات
champion	بطل
awesome	رائع / مذهل

shade	ظل
greenhouse	صوبة زراعية
nightmare	كابوس
competitor	منافس - خصم

athlete	لاعب - رياضي
medal	ميدالية
pollution	تلوث

biography	سيرة ذاتية (عن شخص)
the future	المستقبل
award	جائزة - منحة

Adjectives صفات

worse at	أسوأ في
toxic	سام
dangerous	خطير
acid	حمضي
horrible	مفزع
asleep	نائم

famous	مشهور
awful	فظيع
clean	نظيف
dirty	قذر - متسخ
harmful	ضار
successful	ناجح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
agree	يوافق	agreed
play	يلعب	played
try	يجرب	tried
watch	يشاهد	watched
climb	يتسلق	climbed
cook	يطهو	cooked
compete	يتنافس	competed
kill	يقتل	killed
destroy	يُدمر	destroyed
cause	يسبب	caused
avoid	يتجنب	avoided
practice	يمارس	practiced
kick	يركل	kicked
stay	يمكث-يبقى	stayed
protect	يحمي	protected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
am / is / are	يكون	was / were
win	يفوز	won
do	يفعل/ يمارس	did
draw	يرسم	drew
make	يُعد (طعام)	made
sing	يغني	sang
can	يستطيع	could
become	يصبح	became
lose	يخسر	lost
hold	يحمل	held
throw	يرمي	threw
speak	يتحدث	spoke



Pronunciation

















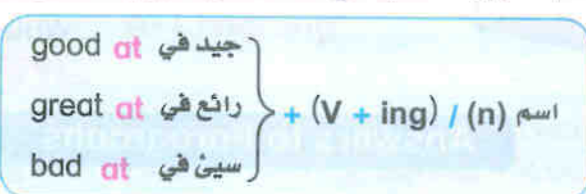




Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 good at/ great at/ bad at

◉ نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية في التحدث عن ما يجيد شخص ما فعله أو لا يجيد فعله :

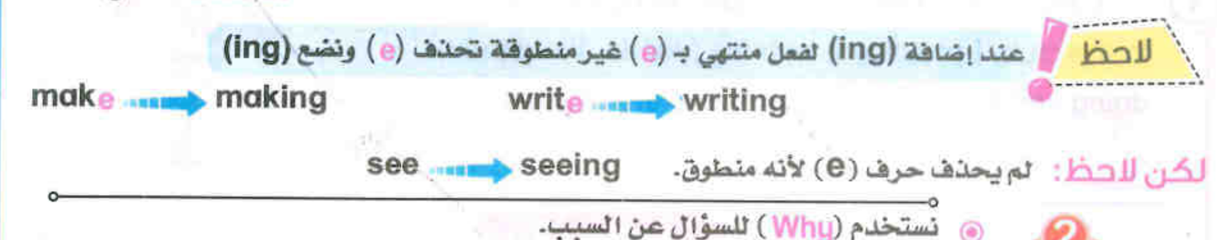


good at جيد في
great at رائع في
bad at سيئ في
} + (V + ing) / (n) اسم

- I'm good at playing football / I'm good at football.

◉ يمكن استخدام أي من الصيغتين (v + ing) أو الاسم (n).

- My sister is great at writing poems.
- They are bad at tennis.



لاحظ : عند إضافة (ing) لفعل منتهي بـ (e) غير منطوقة تحذف (e) ونضع (ing)

make → making   write → writing

لكن لاحظ: لم يحذف حرف (e) لأنه منطوق.   see → seeing

2 because

◉ نستخدم (Why) للسؤال عن السبب.

- Why are you good at table tennis?

وللاجابة نستخدم : سبب ← because → نتيجة

- I'm good at table tennis because I can move fast.

3 but & and

◉ نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة

أي أنها تضيف للمعنى:

- I play tennis and basketball.   - I like fruit and vegetables.

◉ و نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

- The desert is very interesting, but it is very hot.
- I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.

لاحظ التالي عند المقارنة :



good جيد → better than أفضل من → the best الأفضل

- I'm good at football but I'm better at squash.



bad سيئ → worse than أسوأ من → the worst الأسوأ

- I'm bad at karate but I'm worse at kung fu.



مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 1

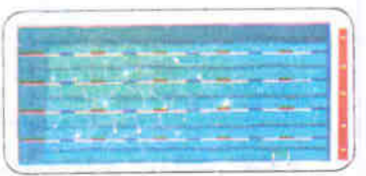
My favorite sport



1. I like sports. My favorite sport is karate. I do karate in the club. I practice it with my friends. I'm great at doing karate.

Lesson 3

The swimming pool



2. I like swimming. I swim in the swimming pool. I wear goggles to protect my eyes. I like sports. I swim at the weekend.

Lessons 5 & 6

Hedaya Malak



3. Hedaya Malak was born on April 12, 1993 . She won many awards. She is training very hard. She really wants to win a gold medal. She is a famous taekwondo player.

Activity - Unit 2

A sportsperson



4. My friend is a sportsperson. He loves sports very much. He practices sports in the club. He wins many awards. He trains hard to win a lot of prizes in the future.

Azhar Exercises  الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose: استمع واختر:

1. Monkeys are good at climbing .... (walls - trees - houses)
2. .... is my favorite sport. (Football - Handball - Taekwondo)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below: أقرأ وأكمل:

squash - match - sport

A : What are you watching?
B : An old - - - - - - - - - - - - - .
A : What - - - - - - - - - - - - - are you good at?
B : I'm good at playing - - - - - - - - - - - - - .

C- Reading

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: أقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi, I'm Osama. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I play football with my friends at the club. I'm bad at playing handball.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Osama is good at playing .... (handball - karate - football)
2. Osama likes making .... (cakes - salad - cheese)
3. Osama is bad at playing .... (football - handball - tennis)

D- The Reader

4 Read and write (True) or (False): اقرأ وأكتب صح أم خطأ:

		True	False
1	Mr Bassam is Amir's teacher.		
2	Amir's poster is about his pet lizard.		

E- Usage

5 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm good .... playing football.
   a at   b for   c in
2. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian .... player.
   a football   b handball   c taekwondo

ON UNIT 2 Activity



1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. He is good at .... tennis.
   a play   b playing   c plays
2. I'm good at football .... I practice a lot.
   a but   b to   c because
3. Wael is .... at squash than Ali.
   a worst   b better   c good
4. We play football on the football ....
   a pitch   b rackets   c pool

2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A nightmare is	a. a glass building used for growing plants.
2 Hedaya Malak was born	b. what I wear when I go swimming.
3 She is practicing	c. on April 21, 1993.
4 Swimming goggles are	d. a bad dream.
5 A greenhouse is	e. hard to win the gold medal.

3 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Football is one of the most popular sports in the world. People like it very much. People play football on pitches. It is one of the most important games in the Olympic Games since 1900. People play football by foot only, but the goalkeeper حارس المرمى is the only player who can hold the ball with his / her hands. People play football in two teams. Each team consists of eleven players. The winner is the team with players who score the most goals.

A- Choose the correct answer:

1. People play football on ....
   a pools   b pitches   c farms
2. A football team consists of .... players.
   a 12   b 13   c 11

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

B- Answer the following questions:

1. Who can hold the ball with his / her hands? ....
2. What's the most popular sport in the world? ....

4 Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

fresheners - toxic - emissions

The air is very bad. I can't breathe. The air is black and ❶ .... Inside the house we use air ❷ .... to try to make the air smell better. We can't go outside. There are too many cars and too much traffic. There are too many ❸ .... from cars.

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. are - jumping - Cats - at - good. ....
2. won - important - Hedaya - awards - many. ....
3. she - Why - is - important? ....
4. great - Mazin - is - doing - at - jigsaws. ....

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

A sportsperson

sports - practice - future - win - hard - awards

....
....
....
....
....

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. what is your favorite sport, ali ....
2. he is a famous egyptian player ....

Theme 1

I discover myself

Unit 3

How do I look?

كيف يبدو مظهرى؟





Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

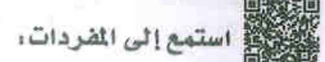
1. Listen, read, research, and write about different types of clothes.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع الملابس المختلفة.
2. Listen to a conversation about packing for a vacation.
   - يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة عن الأمتعة المستخدمة للسفر فى إجازة.
3. Learn about the geography of Egypt.
   - يتعلم الطالب عن جغرافية مصر.
4. Practice using the infinitive of purpose.
   - يتدرب الطالب على استخدام مصدر الفعل للتعبير عن الغرض.
5. Read a traditional folktale.
   - يقرأ الطالب حكاية شعبية قديمة.
6. Learn how to say past simple endings /d/ , /t/ and / Id /.
   - يتعلم الطالب نطق الأفعال المنتهية بـ(ed) فى الماضى البسيط.
7. Multiply multi-digit numbers.
   - يقوم الطالب بعملية ضرب للأرقام الكبيرة.
8. Write a description of favorite clothes using adjectives.
   - يكتب الطالب وصف عن الملابس المفضلة باستخدام الصفات.
9. Research and make a leaflet about traditional clothes from around the world.
   - يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ويعمل منشور عن الملابس التقليدية حول العالم.






Lesson 1 ★ Our trip to Al Fayoum







Clothes ملابس


T-shirt تى شيرت


sunglasses نظارة شمس


swimming shorts شورت سباحة (مايوه)

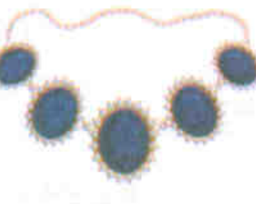

scarf كوفية (شال)


sweater بلوفر




sneakers حذاء رياضى

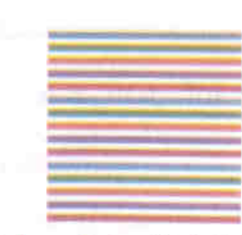
galabeya جلابية


necklace عُقد


pajamas بيجامة


coat بالطو


spotted منقط


striped (مقلم) مخطط
stripes (تقليم) خطوط


pack يعبئ (حقيبة السفر)

Unit 3 How do I look?

Other words كلمات أخرى

trip	رحلة قصيرة
suitcase	شنطة سفر
ages	فترة طويلة
pool	حمام سباحة
pearl	لؤلؤ
gold	ذهب / ذهبى
come on	هيا
shopping mall	مركز تسوق (مول)
walk around	يتجول

Adjectives  صفات

exciting	شيق / مثير
excited	متشوق متحمس
lovely	محبوب
cool	رائع / بارد
comfortable	مريح
natural	طبيعى
man -made	من صنع الانسان
uncle	عم / خال
aunt	عمة / خالة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
need	يحتاج	needed
remember	يتذكر	remembered
pack	يُعبئ (شنط سفر)	packed
visit	يزور	visited

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
take	يأخذ	took
see	يرى	saw
wear	يرتدى	wore
give	يعطى	gave
know	يعرف	knew

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 Suggestion الإقتراح

◉ للتعبير عن الاقتراح نستخدم:

What about + noun اسم ?............ ماذا عن / ما رأيك في ؟

- What about my best galabeya?

2 Giving advice التعبير عن النصيحة

فاعل + should ينبغى أن + inf. مصدر الفعل

- You should pack a sweater.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 Future simple tense المستقبل البسيط

مصدر الفعل + will ('ll) + inf. فاعل (كل الضمائر)

◉ يستخدم للتعبير عن شيء سوف يحدث فى المستقبل.

- I will take my gold necklace.
- She'll pack her suitcases tomorrow.

◉ وفى النفى نستخدم:

فاعل + will not (= won't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

- You won't need your coat.

◉ وفى السؤال بـ (هل....؟) نستخدم:

Will + فاعل + inf.....?

- Will I need my scarf?
- Yes, you will. إجابة مختصرة مثبتة: No, you won't. إجابة مختصرة منفية:

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

◉ تستخدم الكلمات الآتية مع زمن المستقبل البسيط:

tomorrow غداً - next القادم (week - year - month) - in the future فى المستقبل

2 the one / the ones

◉ تستخدم the one لعدم تكرار الاسم المفرد:

- I'll need my T-shirt. I'll take the one that my grandma gave me.

◉ وتستخدم the ones لعدم تكرار الاسم الجمع:

- He'll need these pajamas. He'll buy the ones with the stripes.

Study the following

1. We need to pack our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.
   - نحتاج أن نعبئ شنط السفر للاجازة غداً.
2. We haven't seen them for ages.
   - لم نرهم منذ فترة طويلة.
3. You need to wear something comfortable on your feet.
   - تحتاج أن ترتدى شيء مريح فى قدميك.
4. What else do I need?
   - ماذا أحتاج أيضا؟
5. It will be very sunny.
   - سيكون الطقس مشمس جدًا.
6. It can be cool in the evenings.
   - يمكن أن يكون الطقس بارد فى الامسيات.
7. I'll take the ones with the stripes.
   - سوف آخذ البيجامة التى بها خطوط (مقلمة).
8. They're really cool!
   - إنها رائعة حقًا.

1 Listen and read. What are Mom and Aser doing?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا تفعل الام وآسر ؟



استمع إلى النص:

Mom: Aser, we need to **pack** our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.

Aser: It's so exciting! I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. And, of course, Faris and Dina.

Mom: I know. I'm excited to see them, too. We haven't seen them for ages! But come on, we need to pack!

Aser: OK, I need to pack my green T-shirt and my swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool, don't they?

Mom: Yes, and remember your sunglasses. It will be very sunny.

Aser: Will I need a coat and a scarf?

Mom: No, Aser, you won't. But you should pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.

Aser: OK. I'll pack my blue sweater. That's my favorite.

Mom: You'll need your sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot and you need to wear something comfortable on your feet.

Aser: What about my best galabeya? Will I need the one that Grandma gave me?

Mom: No, you won't. But I will take my gold necklace.

Aser: Hmm. OK. What else do I need? Oh, I know! My pajamas! I'll take the ones with the **stripes**. They're really cool!

2 Listen again and answer the questions:

استمع مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1. Who is Aser going to visit?
   He's going to visit Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak.
2. Is Aser going somewhere hot or cold? How do you know?
   ----
3. Why does Aser need a sweater?
   ----
4. Does Aser take his galabeya?
   ----
5. Which pajamas does Aser pack?
   ----

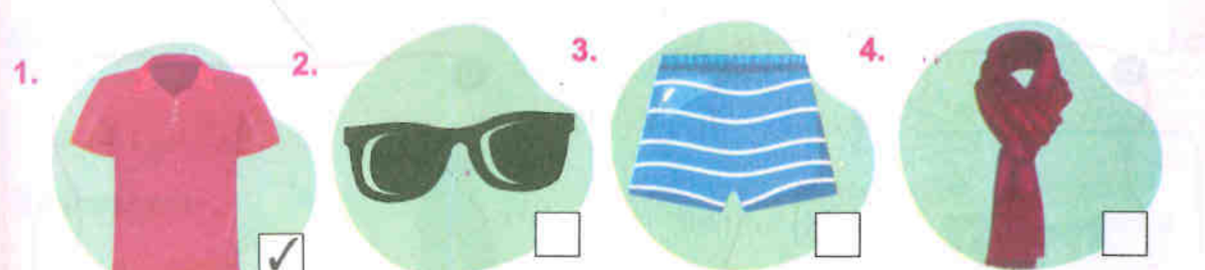
3 Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

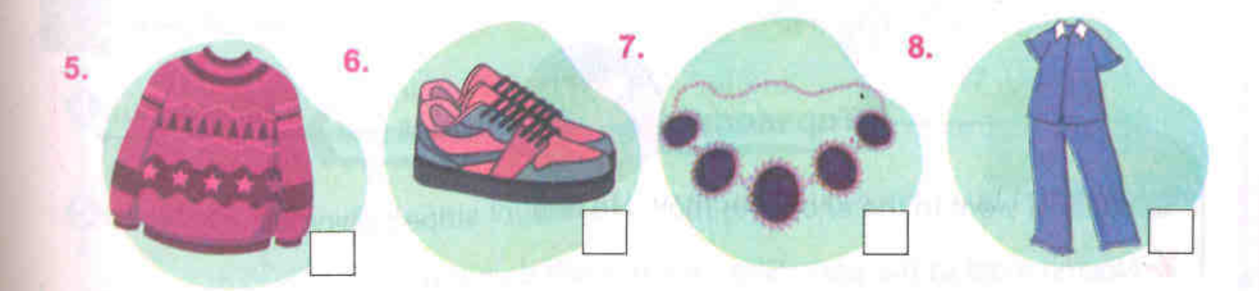
استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

1- T-shirt
2- sunglasses
3- swimming shorts
4- scarf
5- sweater
6- sneakers
7- necklace
8- pajamas



1. ✓ 2. ☐ 3. ☐ 4. ☐



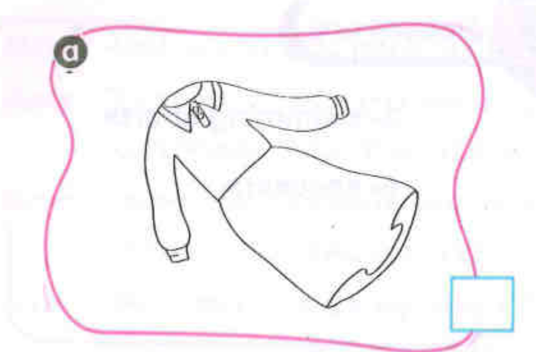
5. ☐ 6. ☐ 7. ☐ 8. ☐

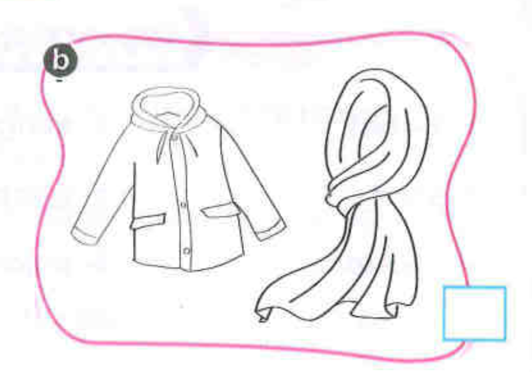
4 Read the dialog in Exercise 1 again. Check (✓) the items in Exercise 3 that Aser packs.

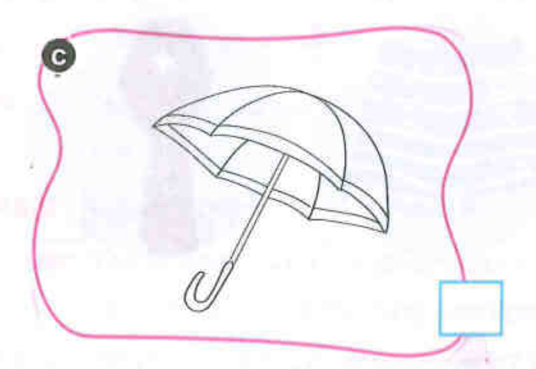
اقرأ المحادثة فى تمرين (١) مرة أخرى وضع علامة (✓) على صور الأشياء التى وضعها «آسر» فى شنطة السفر فى التمرين السابق.

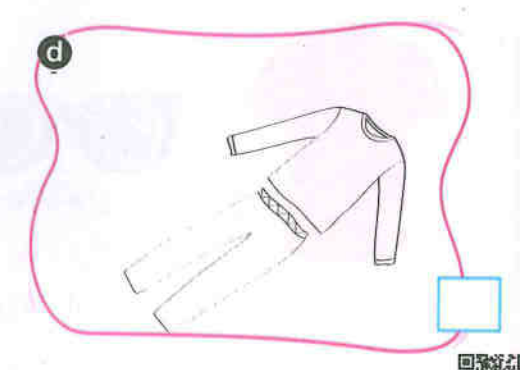
5 Listen, number and draw: استمع ورقم وارسم.

 spotted منقط   striped مخطط (مقلم)

a


b


c


d


استمع إلى النص:




Tapescript نص الاستماع

1- Youssef went to the shopping mall. He bought striped pajamas.

2- Nesma went to the park. She took a spotted umbrella.

3- Amira went to school. She wore her striped uniform.

4- Wael played in the rain. He wore a coat and a spotted scarf.

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

- **Cotton grows in the Nile Delta. Many people believe that Egyptian cotton is the best cotton in the world.**

ينمو القطن فى دلتا النيل. يعتقد كثيرمن الناس أن القطن المصرى هو افضل قطن فى العالم.



Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

need - packing - shorts

Samy : What are you doing, Hisham?
Hisham : I'm ❶ ______________ my suitcase for my holiday.
Samy : Where are you going on holiday?
Hisham : I'm going to Al Fayoum to visit Uncle Sherif.
Samy : What will you ❷ ______________ to take in your suitcase?
Hisham : I'll take my sunglasses, T-shirts and my swimming ❸ ______________.

2 Match: صل:

A

1 sneakers

2 scarf
3 pajamas

4 sunglasses
5 necklace


B

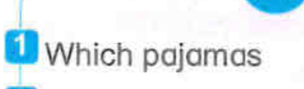


A


D

B C E

3 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:




A	B
1 Which pajamas	a. very sunny.
2 Will I need	b. I need?
3 It will be	c. does Aser pack?
4 What else do	d. his suitcase tomorrow.
5 He'll pack	e. a coat and a scarf?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We'll .... our sneakers.
   a took b take c taking
2. You need .... to go to the pool.
   a pajamas b sweaters c swimming shorts
3. .... about my best sweater?
   a What b Which c Who
4. **A:** .... I need my scarf? **B:** No, you won't.
   a Do b Will c Have
5. Women wear .... around their necks.
   a coats b sweaters c necklaces

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. cool - They're - really.
   ----
2. pack - my - I'll - T-shirt - favorite.
   ----
3. bought - some - He - pajamas - striped.
   ----
4. took - She - umbrella - a - spotted.
   ----
5. grows - Delta - Cotton - Nile - in the.
   ----

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. why do you need your necklace, laila
   ----
2. hoda went to the shopping mall last friday

Lesson 2 ★ Geography



استمع إلى المفردات:

Nile Delta دلتا النيل



Fayoum Depression منخفض الفيوم



Nile Valley وادي النيل



mountain جبل



glacier كتلة جليدية



river نهر



sand dunes كثبان رملية



flood فيضان





rainforest غابة استوائية



desert صحراء



waterfall شلال

sculpture	تمثال منحوت
fossils	حفريات
fertile	خصب (للتربة)
canal	قناة مائية / ترعة

river banks	ضفاف النهر
soil erosion	تآكل (تعرية) التربة
wind erosion	تآكل (تعرية) بفعل الرياح
low	منخفض

Places أماكن

Cairo	مدينة القاهرة
Libya	دولة ليبيا
the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
Sudan	دولة السودان
the Nile	نهر النيل
the Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط

Other words كلمات أخرى

country	بلد / دولة
through	من خلال
the north	الشمال
the south	الجنوب
the west	الغرب
capital	عاصمة
modern city	مدينة حديثة
lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس
oasis (oases)	واحة (واحات)
whales	حيتان
stem	ساق (نبات)
branch	فرع (للنهر)
east coast	الساحل الشرقي
Lower Egypt	مصر السفلى
look like	تشبه
amazing sights	مشاهد رائعة
until	حتي
home	موطن
humans	البشر
crops	محاصيل
huge	ضخم
towards	تجاه

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
flow	يتدفق (للنهر)	flowed
change	يتغير	changed
reach	يصل	reached
stretch	يمتد	stretched
connect to	يربط بـ	connected to
destroy	يدمر	destroyed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
run	يجرى (للنهر)	ran
grow	يزرع	grew
lie	يقع (فى مكان)	lay
blow	تهب (الرياح)	blew
spread out	يمتد	spread out

Definitions تعريفات

flow	يتدفق	the way water moves
fertile	خصبة	good land to grow plants and crops
river bank	ضفة النهر	the land along the side of a river
canal	ترعة	a waterway made by humans

soil erosion تآكل (تعرية) التربة	when water, wind, or other things break down the soil, and take the soil particles away
wind erosion تآكل (تعرية) بفعل الرياح	when the wind moves the soil from one place to another, an causes change or damage to the soil

Study the following

1. Egypt is a very beautiful country.
   - مصر بلد جميلة جدًا.
2. Cairo is a modern city in Lower Egypt.
   - القاهرة مدينة حديثة فى مصر السفلى.
3. The Nile runs through the country.
   - يجرى نهر النيل خلال البلد.
4. The Fayoum Depression is a very special place.
   - منخفض الفيوم مكان خاص جدًا .
5. The Fayoum Depression is in the Western Desert of Egypt.
   - يقع منخفض الفيوم فى الصحراء الغربية فى مصر .
6. It is connected to the Nile River by the Bahr Youssef Canal.
   - إنه مرتبط بنهر النيل عن طريق ترعة بحر يوسف.
7. The Nile Valley is the area of land on the banks of the Nile River.
   - وادى النيل منطقة من الأرض على ضفاف نهر النيل.
8. Many people say that the Nile Valley is like a lotus flower.
   - يقول كثير من الناس أن وادى النيل مثل زهرة اللوتس.
9. They were made by the wind.
   - هم من صنع الرياح.
10. There weren't any sculptures millions of years ago.
    - لم يكن هناك تماثيل منحوتة منذ ملايين السنين.

1 Which of these natural features can you find in Egypt?

أى من مظاهر الطبيعة الآتية تجدها فى مصر؟

1 
mountain

2 
glacier

3 
river

4 
flood

5 
rainforest

6 
desert

7 
waterfall

8 
sand dunes



2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

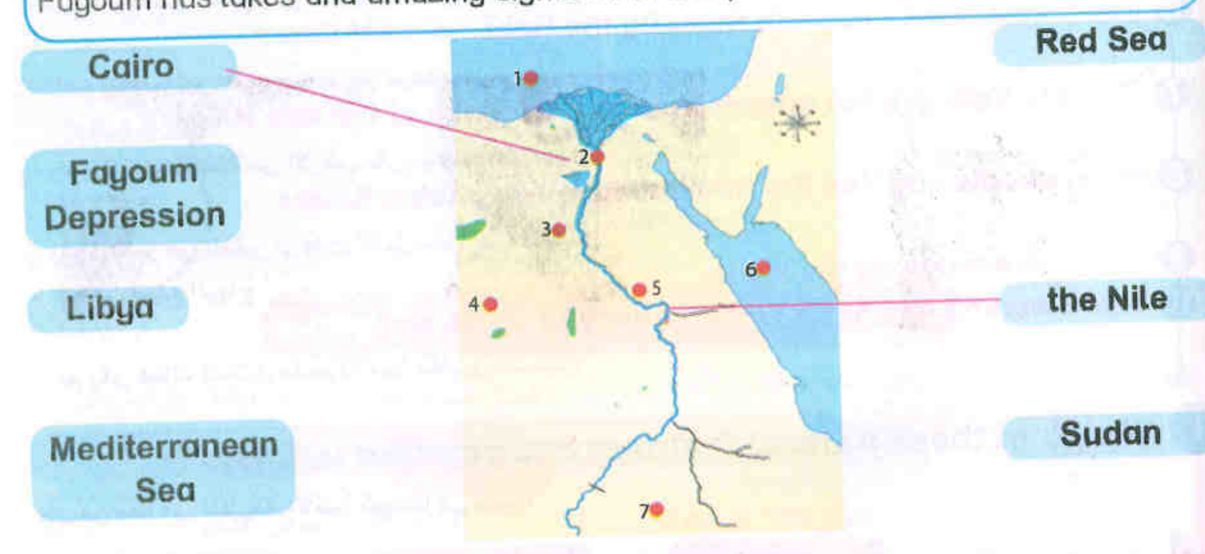


استمع إلى النص:

Egypt is a very beautiful country. The Nile runs through the country until it reaches the Mediterranean Sea[1] in the north. Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is a modern city in Lower Egypt [2]. Libya lies to the west of Egypt and Sudan lies to the south. The Red Sea lies on Egypt's east coast. The Fayoum Depression[3] is a very special place, as it's an oasis with the biggest waterfalls in Egypt. It has the huge Wadi El Rayan park[4], which is home to many birds and animals. There are also fossils of whales[5]! Fayoum has lakes and amazing sights all in one place!

Arabic Meaning

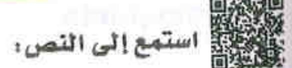
١- البحر الابيض المتوسط
٢- مصر السفلى
٣- منخفض الفيوم
٤- حديقة وادي الريان
٥- حفريات للحيتان (بقايا حيتان)



3 Read. Match the places in the box to the photos:

اقرأ وصل الأماكن فى القائمة بالصور:

Nile Delta - Fayoum Depression - Nile Valley



استمع إلى النص:

The Nile Delta[1] is in Lower Egypt. About 20 kilometers north of Cairo, the Nile River spreads out[2] into two branches[3]. These two branches flow towards the Mediterranean Sea. The Nile Delta is the fertile soil between the two branches of the Nile. It stretches from Alexandria to Port Said and it looks like a triangle.

Arabic Meaning

١- دلتا النيل
٢- يمتد
٣- فرعين

The Nile Valley[4] is the area of land on the banks of the Nile River. It is very good for growing crops like wheat, dates, and beans. Many people say that the Nile Valley is like a lotus flower[5] - the river and the river banks are the stem of the flower, and the Nile Delta is the flower.

The Fayoum Depression is in the Western Desert[6] of Egypt. It is an area of land that is low below sea level. It was made by wind erosion[7] about 1.8 million years ago. It is connected to the Nile River by the Bahr Youssef canal[8]. This means there is water here, so it is a green place where many plants grow.

٤- وادي النيل
٥- زهرة اللوتس
٦- الصحراء الغربية
٧- تعرية بفعل الرياح
٨- ترعة بحر يوسف

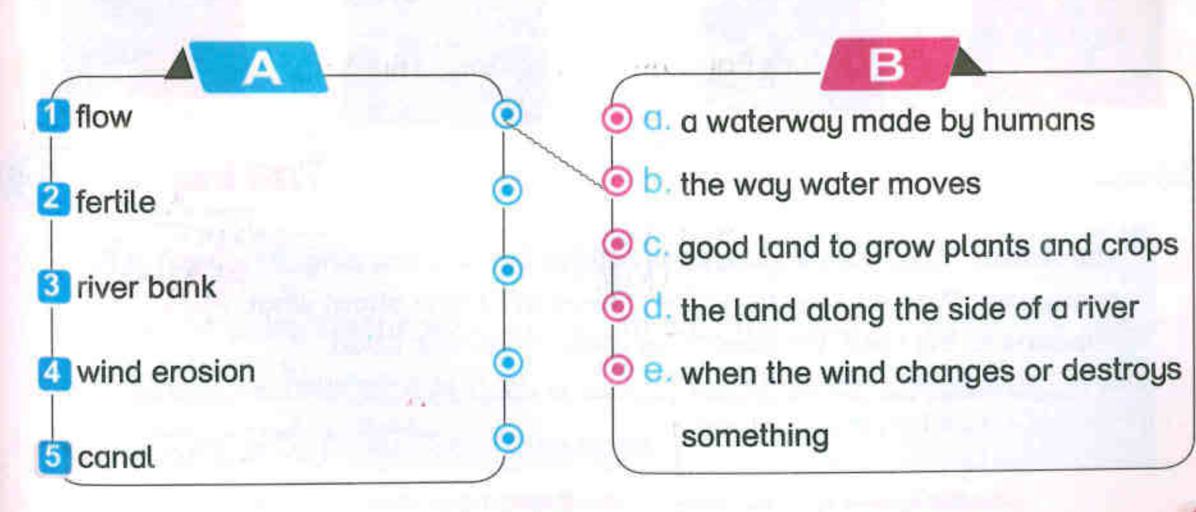
1 
....

2 
....

3 
....

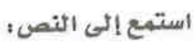
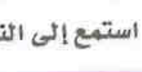
4 Look at the words in bold in the text. Match them to their meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات فى القطعة السابقة وصلها بمعانيها:



5 Look and read. What made the sculptures? انظر واقرأ. من صنع التماثيل المنحوتة؟

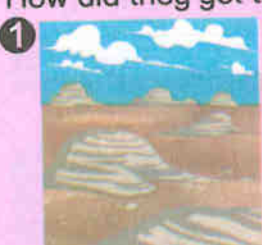




استمع إلى النص:

Wind erosion

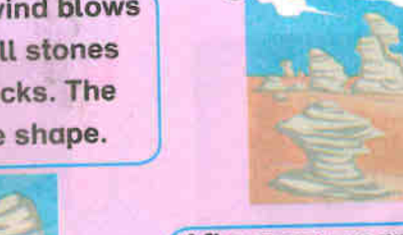
In Egypt's White Desert[1], you can see some amazing sculptures[2]. How did they get there? They were made by the wind.

Arabic Meaning
١- صحراء مصر البيضاء
٢- تماثيل منحوتة

1 

There weren't any sculptures millions of years ago.

Over time, the wind blows sand and small stones against the rocks. The rocks change shape.

2 

3

After many years, the wind and sand turn the rocks into beautiful sculptures.

6 Look at the photos. Do you think they happened because of wind erosion (W) or soil erosion (S)? Write W or S, then compare with a partner.

انظر إلى الصور الآتية هل تعتقد ما حدث لهم بفعل تعرية الرياح أو تعرية التربة؟ اكتب (W) أو (S) ثم قارن مع زميلك:


1  ☐
2  ☐
3  ☐
4  ☐

Think

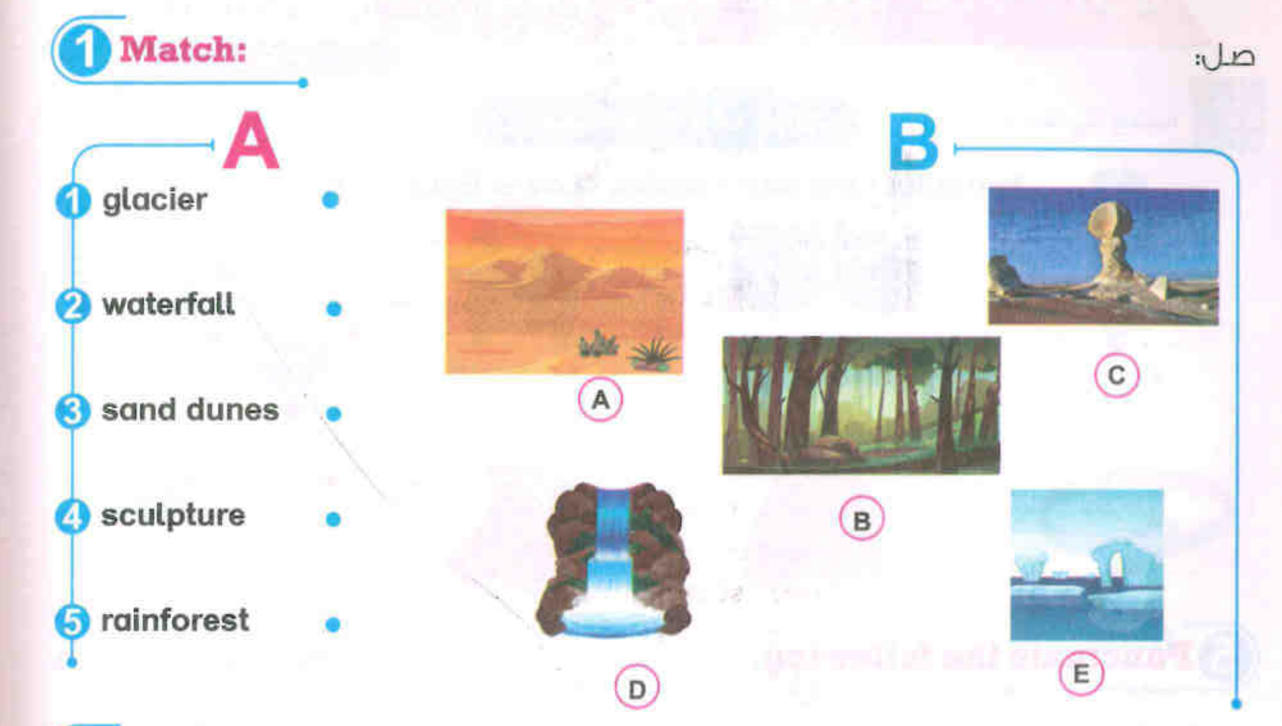
The Aswan High Dam was built to control the Nile flooding every year. Why do you think it was needed? Think about what happens to the land, the people, and the crops in a flood.

لقد تم بناء السد العالى فى أسوان ليتحكم فى فيضان نهر النيل كل عام. فكر فيما سيحدث للأرض والناس والمحاصيل فى الفيضان.



Activities

1 Match: صل:



A	B
1 glacier	A
2 waterfall	B
3 sand dunes	C
4 sculpture	D
5 rainforest	E

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The Aswan High Dam was	a. in the Western Desert of Egypt.
2 The Fayoum Depression is	b. a waterway made by humans.
3 A canal is	c. Lower Egypt.
4 The Nile Delta is in	d. sculptures millions of years ago.
5 There weren't any	e. built to control the Nile flooding.




3 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

Nile - capital - modern

We live in Cairo. It's the ❶ .... of Egypt. It's a ❷ .... city in Lower Egypt. There's the ❸ .... It runs through the country until it reaches the Mediterranean Sea in the north.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

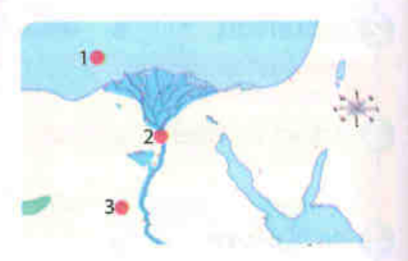
4 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



Your country (Egypt)

beautiful - the Nile - capital - Lower Egypt - love



----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

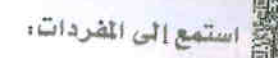
1. is egypt a very beautiful country

----

2. you can see sculptures in Egypt s White Desert

Lesson 3 ★ My favorite clothes




استمع الى المفردات:

 galabeya جلابية	 sleeves أكمام	 pockets جيوب	 suit بدلة
 a striped dress فستان مخطط (مقلم)	 a spotted dress فستان منقط	 sweater بلوفر	 belt حزام
 costume زي خاص	 crown تاج	 gloves قفازات (جوانتي)	 robe رداء/ثوب (روب)



Other words كلمات أخرى

social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
information	معلومات
for example	على سبيل المثال/ مثلًا
princess	أميرة
study hard	يذاكر بجد
Egyptian clothing	ملابس مصرية
festival	مهرجان / احتفال
pattern	شكل / نمط
cardboard paper	ورق مقوى
cotton	قطن
wedding	زفاف
essay	مقال
grades	درجات في الامتحان
library	مكتبة لقراءة واستعارة الكتب



Adjectives صفات

traditional	تقليدي / قديم
hidden	خفي / غير ظاهر
colorful	كثير الألوان / زاهي الألوان
useful	مفيد
popular	شعبي / شائع / محبوب
sunburned	مصاب بحروق الشمس
special	مميز / خاص

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
borrow	يستعير / يستلف	borrowed
protect	يحمي	protected
travel	يسافر	traveled
call	يتصل / ينادي	called
study	يذاكر / يدرس	studied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
tell	يخبر	told
get	يحصل علي / يصاب بـ	got
leave	يغادر / يترك	left
buy	يشتري	bought
sleep	ينام	slept

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

Can you + inf. (مصدر الفعل).....?

1 Polite request طلب شيء بأسلوب مهذب

- Can you help me?
- Can you give me some information?

وللرد:

- Yes, of course. What do you want to know?
- Oh, sure.

be / get / look + صفة.

2 نستخدم الصفة بعد بعض الأفعال مثل (be - get - look)

- The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned!
- They're hidden.
- It looks really cool to wear.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

To + inf (مصدر الفعل) للتعبير عن الغرض

- نستخدم (to + inf.) للتعبير عن الغرض من فعل شيء ما.

- I need a pen to write my homework.

- وفي حالة السؤال عن الغرض نستخدم كلمة الاستفهام (لماذا...؟ Why...?):

- Why did Samy go to town?
  Samy went to town to buy new sneakers.
- Why did Tarek make a suit?
- Tarek made a suit to wear to a wedding.

- لاحظ للاجابة عن السؤال بـ(Why...?) نستخدم (because or to):

1 Listen and read. Fares is talking to his friend Tomas on social media. What does Tomas want to know about?

استمع واقرأ. فارس يتكلم مع صديقه توماس عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. ماذا يريد توماس أن يعرف؟

استمع إلى النص:

Tomas: Hi, Fares. Can you help me? I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing. Can you give me some information?

Fares: Hi, Tomas. Yes, of course. What do you want to know?

Tomas: Well, what do you usually wear?

Fares: I live in Sohag and it's usually very hot here. Today, I'm wearing shorts and a T-shirt.

Tomas: Cool! Can you tell me about some traditional Egyptian clothes?

Fares: Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white **robe** that is very popular.

Tomas: Yes, I've seen it. It looks really cool to wear.

Fares: Yes, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The **sleeves** are long so we don't get sunburned!

Tomas: Are there **pockets**?

Fares: Yes! But they're hidden – you can't see them from the outside.

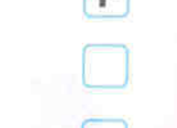
Tomas: Do you wear galabeyas when you're celebrating a special festival?

Fares: We do, and the clothes we wear for Eid, for example, are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes there are beautiful patterns on them.

Tomas: Thanks, Fares. That's really useful!

2 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False): اقرأ مرة أخرى واجب بـ (صح) أو (خطأ):

1. Tomas wants to buy some Egyptian clothes. F
2. Fares isn't wearing a galabeya today. ☐
3. Galabeyas are usually made from cotton. ☐
4. Galabeyas are always white. ☐
5. Galabeyas don't have pockets. ☐






3 Work with a partner. Talk about your favorite clothes, or clothes you wear to celebrate. Write three sentences in your notebook:

اشترك مع زميلك. تحدث عن ملابسك المفضلة أو الملابس التى ترتديها للاحتفال. أكتب ثلاث جمل فى كراستك:

- I've got a striped dress. I love it! I wear it to celebrate Sham El-Nessim. شم النسيم
- My favorite thing is my sweater. It's blue and it has a pocket. I wear it when I travel.

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....

4 Look and complete: انظر وأكمل:

belt - costume - crown - gloves - pockets - spotted

1. Marwa is wearing a spotted dress with a belt. There are two ....
2. Reem is wearing a .... She looks like a princess! She has a .... on her head. She has white .... on her hands.



5 Work with a partner. Read and answer: اشترك مع زميلك وأجب:

اقرأ الإجابات والاسئلة الآتية حول استخدام to + inf. للتعبير عن الغرض من فعل شىء.

1. Sameh went to town to buy new sneakers.
   - Why did Sameh go to town?
2. Nessma went to the kitchen to make a cake.
   - Why did Nessma go to the kitchen?
3. Tarek made a suit to wear to a wedding.
   - Why did Tarek make a suit?

6 Circle the correct words: ضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة:

1. I went to the library borrow / (to borrow) a book.
2. Injy used a pen to write / write her essay.
3. Sherif bought a new suitcase take / to take on holiday.
4. Malak wears her sunglasses to protect / protect her eyes.

7 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I bought some sunglasses	a. to play with our friends.
2 We went to the park	b. to buy some bread.
3 Hazem studied hard	c. to finish their homework.
4 Basma went to the shop	d. to wear on holiday.
5 They went to the library	e. to get good grades.

8 Listen and number: استمع ورقم:

استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

Girl 1 : I went to town to buy a beautiful new dress for the party.

Boy 1 : I got some cardboard paper to make my poster.

Boy 2 : I searched on the internet to find the information for my homework.

Girl 2 : I bought a scarf and gloves to keep me warm.

a  ☐

b 1

c  ☐

d  ☐

9 Look and make sentences in the past simple to express purpose:

انظر واكتب جمل فى زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن الغرض:

1. I / go / to my bedroom / sleep

   I went to my bedroom to sleep.

2. Nayera / leave / the party / catch her train

   ----

3. Adam / call / Younis / ask for help with his project

   ----

4. Tarek / buy / a racket / play tennis

   ----

10 Complete the sentences with your ideas:

اكمل الجمل الآتية بأفكارك:

1. I went into town --
2. My teacher used a green pen --
3. Basel opened his bag --
4. Mayar made a cake --



Activities

1 Match:

صل:

A	B
1. pockets	A
2. galabeya	B
3. crown	C
4. sleaves	D
5. spotted	E

2 Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The .... is one of the traditional Egyptian clothes.
   a) pocket b) crown c) galabeya
2. Mariam bought a new dress to .... for a birthday party.
   a) wearing b) wear c) wears
3. Nabil has a small .... so he can't put his money in it.
   a) pocket b) belt c) crown
4. **A:** Why did Ola go to the library? **B:** To .... books.
   a) reads b) reading c) read
5. The galabeya is a long white .... that is very popular in Egypt.
   a) robe b) belt c) pocket

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1. Galabeyas are usually white,	a. you're celebrating a special festival?
2. Ayman went to the market	b. so we don't get sunburned!
3. Mustafa studies hard to	c. but you can get other colors too.
4. Do you wear galabeyas when	d. get good grades.
5. The sleeves are long	e. to buy some cheese.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

sleeves - pockets - galabeyas

In Egypt, many people wear traditional Egyptian clothes. They wear ❶ .... when they're celebrating a special festival. For example, they wear them for Eid. The galabeyas have long ❷ .... They also have hidden ❸ ....

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات

1. help - you - me - Can?

---

2. to - the - Tarek - went - shops.

---

3. from - are - cotton - made - Galabeyas.

---

4. gloves - Hazem - his - to - hands - wears - protect.

---

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

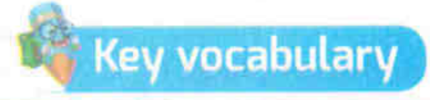
1. does hossam wear a galabeya for Eid

---

2. fatma and rasha bought rackets to play tennis



The Elves and the Shoemaker



استمع إلى المفردات:



shoemaker	صانع أحذية	enough	كافي
elf (elves)	جني صغير (جن)		

Other words كلمات أخرى

money	نقود	quickly	بسرعة
tonight	هذا المساء (الليلة)	happily	بسعادة
sports day	يوم رياضي	meal	وجبة
Oh dear.	وا أسفاه.	details	تفاصيل
wife	زوجة	kindness	عطف
workshop	ورشة	pair	زوج من (أحذية مثلا)
leather	جلد مدبوغ	once upon a time	يحكى أن

Adjectives صفات

kind	طيب	beautiful	جميل
honest	أمين	delicious	لذيذ
poor	فقير	surprised	مندهش
tired	مُتعب	new	جديد
perfect	رائع	interesting	شيق
amazing	مدهش / رائع	happy	سعيد
amazed	مذهول		



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
believe	يؤمن / يعتقد	believed
dance	يرقص	danced
thank	يشكر	thanked
describe	يصف	described
try	يجرب / يقيس	tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
cut out	يقص	cut out
pay	يدفع (مالا)	paid
say	يقول	said
find out	يكتشف	found out
feel	يشعر	felt
hide	يختبىء	hid

Study the following

1. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.
   - عمل صانع الأحذية بجد ولكن لم يكن معه نقود.
2. The shoemaker was kind and honest. - كان بائع الأحذية طيب وأمين.
3. The shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. - لم يصدق صانع الأحذية عينيه.
4. The shoemaker's wife made him a delicious meal.
   - اعدت زوجة صانع الأحذية له وجبة لذيذة.
5. They were surprised to see two little elves.
   - كانوا مندهشين لرؤية اثنان من الجن الصغير.
6. She walked in the park yesterday. - قامت بالتمشية فى الحديقة امس.
7. They're perfect. - إنهم رائعين.
8. The wife looked surprised. - بدت الدهشة على الزوجة.
9. I have never seen such amazing shoes. - لم أرى أبداً مثل هذا الحذاء المدهش.
10. Can I try them? - هل يمكن أن أجربهم؟
11. The shoemaker and his wife lived happily. - عاش صانع الأحذية وزوجته بسعادة.
12. Who made the shoes every night? - من صنع الأحذية كل ليلة؟

1 Look at the words in bold in the text. What sort of words are they?

انظر إلى الكلمات المحددة فى النص. مانوع هذه الكلمات؟

2 Listen and read. Who made the shoes every night?

استمع واقرأ. من كان يصنع الأحذية كل ليلة؟

استمع إلى النص:





نص الاستماع



Once upon a time, a **kind** and **honest** shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very poor, but they were **happy**. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.

One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. "Oh dear. I've only got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too **tired** to make them tonight. I'll cut the leather now and make the shoes in the morning." The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.

The following morning, the shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. He called to his wife to come quickly to the workshop. "Look at these shoes!" said the shoemaker. There, on his table was an amazing pair of shoes. "They are **beautiful**. Did you make them?" His wife looked surprised. "No, my dear, I didn't make them," he said.

Then a man walked into the shop. "I have never seen such **amazing** shoes," he said. "Can I try them?" He tried on the shoes. "They're perfect," he said and paid the shoemaker. "Quickly," said the shoemaker's wife, "go and buy some more leather." The shoemaker went to buy some more leather.

When he arrived home, the shoemaker's wife had made him a **delicious** meal. "I will just cut out the leather, and then come and eat." The shoemaker cut out the leather for two pairs of shoes and left the workshop for the night.

The following morning, the shoemaker and his wife were amazed to see two beautiful pairs of shoes in the workshop. "We must find out who is making these shoes," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's hide tonight and see who is helping us." That night, the shoemaker cut out the leather and then hid. They were very surprised to see two little elves! The elves started to make the shoes. Soon, they had made two more pairs of beautiful shoes. "We must thank the elves," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's make them new clothes."

The next night, the elves found their **new** clothes. They were so happy that they danced around the workshop before sitting down to make more shoes. Soon, people came from all over the land to buy the shoemaker's shoes. He and his wife weren't ever poor again and they lived happily ever after.

3 Read again. Look at the words in bold in the text. Find:

اقرأ مرة أخرى. انظر إلى الكلمات المحددة فى النص واوجد:

1. a word that describes the shoemaker: honest - كلمة تصف صانع الأحذية.
2. a word that describes the shoes: __________
3. a word that describes the shoemaker's meal: __________

4 Think: How do these words help you to understand the story? Check if you agree:

فكر. كيف تساعدك هذه الكلمات فى فهم القصة؟

1. The adjectives give more details. تعطى الصفات تفاصيل أكثر. ☐
2. The adjectives make the story interesting. ☐
   تجعل هذه الصفات القصة أكثر تشوقًا.

Pronunciation

How to pronounce final /ed/ sounds in verbs
كيفية نطق /ed/ فى نهاية الأفعال المنتظمة

١- تنطق /ed/ فى نهاية الفعل الماضى /Id/ للأفعال التى تنتهى بالاصوات /t/ , /d/

want	→	wanted	/Id/	need	→	needed	/Id/
visit	→	visited	/Id/	add	→	added	/Id/

٢- تنطق /ed/ فى نهاية الفعل الماضى /d/ للأفعال التى تنتهى بالأصوات الآتية:
(n - m - b - l - th (ذ) z - g - j - y - w)

play	→	played	/d/	clean	→	cleaned	/d/
slow	→	slowed	/d/	grab	→	grabbed	/d/

٣- تنطق /ed/ فى نهاية الفعل الماضى /t/ للأفعال التى تنتهى بالأصوات الآتية:
(k - s - x - sh - ch - th (ث) - p - gh)

wash	→	washed	/t/	ask	→	asked	/t/
fix	→	fixed	/t/	dress	→	dressed	/t/
laugh	→	laughed	/t/	watch	→	watched	/t/
type	→	typed	/t/	breathe	→	breathed	/t/

1 Look, say, and match: انظر وقل وصل

a  ☐

b  ☐

c  1

1. Yesterday, I played football.
2. Yesterday, I walked in the park.
3. Yesterday, I tidied my room.

2 Listen: استمع:



استمع إلى النص:

1- /d/ played 2- /t/ walked 3- /Id/ tidied

3 Listen and write the verbs in the correct group: استمع واكتب الأفعال فى المجموعة الصحيحة:



استمع إلى النص:

1. Ramy cleaned the windows. /d/
2. I lived in Cairo. /d/
3. We needed to leave. /Id/
4. I studied English. /Id/
5. I washed the car. /t/
6. I worked in Alexandria. /t/

cleaned - lived - needed - studied - washed - worked

/d/	/t/	/Id/
played	walked	tidied
cleaned		

4 Say. Then listen and check: قل. ثم استمع وتأكد:

1- asked /t/	2- counted /Id/	3- delivered /d/
4- dressed	5- enjoyed	6- fixed
7- promised	8- slowed	9- tasted
10- waited	11- carried	12- wanted



CLIL: Math

Multiply multi-digit numbers
ضرب الأعداد الكبيرة

1 Think and write the numbers. Listen and check:
فكر واكتب الأرقام. استمع وتأكد:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

1. Ten times ten equals a hundred.
2. Thirty times twenty equals six hundred.
3. Fifty times fifty equals two thousand, five hundred.
4. Thirty-eight times twenty-four equals nine hundred and twelve.

1 $10 \times 10 = 100$ 2 $30 \times 20 = 60$

3 $50 \times 50 =$ .... 4 $38 \times 24 =$ ....

2 Look, think, and write:
انظر وفكر واكتب:



1. For sports day, Mrs Amal ordered 12 boxes of T-shirts for the students. Each box has 18 T-shirts. How many T-shirts did Mrs Amal order? ....

في اليوم الرياضي طلبت السيدة آمال ١٢ صندوق من التي شيرت للطلاب. كل صندوق يحتوى على ١٨ تي شيرت. - كم عدد التي شيرت التي طلبتها آمال؟

Answer
$12 \times 18 = 216$



2. Nora makes hats. She's very good. She can make 25 hats each week. How many hats can she make in 48 weeks? ....

تصنع نورا القبعات. هي جيدة جدًا في صنعتها. تستطيع أن تصنع ٢٥ قبعة كل أسبوع. كم عدد القبعات التي تستطيع صنعها في ٤٨ أسبوع؟

Answer
$25 \times 48 =$ ....

Did you know?
If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is zero!
هل تعلم أنه إذا قمت بضرب أي رقم في الصفر فالإجابة تكون صفر.



Activities

1 Read and match:
اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Yesterday I	a. was kind and honest.
2 The shoemaker	b. the shoemaker's shoes.
3 She walked	c. tidied my room.
4 The elves made	d. delicious.
5 The meal was	e. in the park yesterday.

2 Read and circle the odd one out:
اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1	amazing	beautiful	helping	delicious
2	found	make	hide	pay
3	shoes	T-shirts	hats	meals
4	morning	leather	evening	night
5	house	park	wife	town

3 Read and reorder the following to make sentences:
أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. tidied - I - yesterday - room - my.

- -

2. a delicious - His - made - meal - wife.

- -

3. and - amazed - wife - The shoemaker - were - his.

- -

4. and - The shoemaker - wife - lived - happily - his.

- -

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

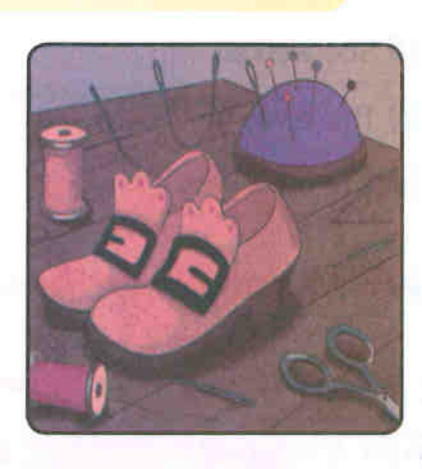
4 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



The Elves and the Shoemaker

shoemaker - honest - workshop - elves - made - new shoes





5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. the shoemaker couldn t believe his eyes

----

2. did the shoemaker s wife make a delicious meal



Writing



استمع إلى المفردات:

school uniform
زى مدرسى



short-sleeved shirt
قميص ذو أكمام قصيرة



checked
ذو مربعات (كاروهات)

tie
رابطة عنق (كرافتة)





trousers
بنطلون



skirt
جيبة

socks
جورب (شراب)



leather shoes
حذاء جلد



vest
صديرى

jacket
چاكيت



sombrero
قبعة مكسيكية (سمبريرو)

Countries دول

India الهند	Japan اليابان
Mexico المكسيك	Finland فنلندا

Other words كلمات أخرى

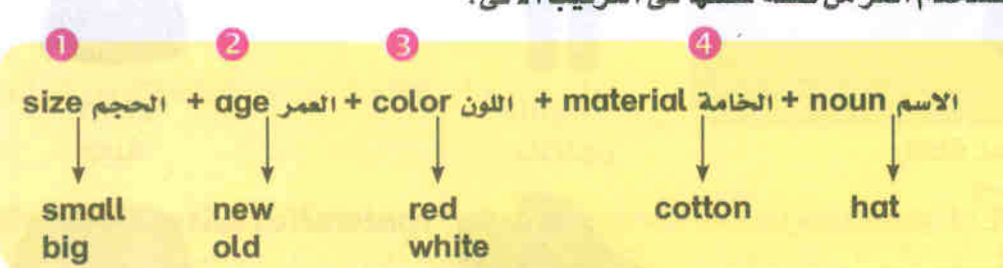
light	فاتح
pale	فاتح / باهت
dark	غامق
Mexican	مكسيكى
during	أثناء
feasts	أعياد
celebrations	احتفالات
smart	أنيق

material	الخامة/ القماش
size	الحجم / المقاس
age	العمر
styles	أساليب/ أشكال
gold	ذهب
silver	فضة
bright colors	ألوان زاهية
linen	كتان

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Adjectives الصفات

- تستخدم الصفات لوصف الأشخاص أو الأشياء.
- تأتى الصفات قبل الاسم التى تصفه أو بعد verb to be.
- عندما نستخدم أكثر من صفة نضعها فى الترتيب الآتى:



- Dad bought me a small new white galabeya.
- He had to wear an old orange hat.
- The shoemaker made a small leather shoes.

Study the following

1. Our school uniform is really smart. زينا المدرسي أنيق جدًا.
2. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests or jackets. عندما يكون الطقس بارد، نرتدي صديري أزرق غامق أو جاكيت.
3. Mexican girls love bright colors. تحب البنات المكسيكيات الألوان الزاهية.
4. A sombrero is a traditional Mexican hat. سمبريرو هى قبعة مكسيكية تقليدية.
5. There are lots of different styles of sombrero. هناك الكثير من الأشكال مختلفة للقبعات المكسيكية.
6. My mother bought me a red cotton dress. اشترت لى والدتى فستان قطن أحمر.
7. It doesn't get very cold here. الطقس لايصل للبرودة هنا.
8. We have to wear a tie every day. لابد أن نرتدى رابطة عنق (كرافتة) كل يوم.

1 Look and read. Whose school uniform is shown in the picture?

انظر واقرا. أى زى مدرسى موضح فى صورة الطلاب:








Student A:
I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short - sleeved[1] white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.

Student B:
At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie[2] every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes[3] on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale[4] blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked[5] skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.

Arabic Meaning
١- قميص ذو أكمام
٢- كرافتة
٣- خطوط (تقليم)
٤- فاتح/باهت
٥- كاروهات
٦- أنيق
٧- صديرى

Student C:
Our school uniform is really smart[6]. We have to wear a white shirt with a red tie. We wear a dark gray skirt and a blue jacket.

Student D:
The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light green shorts and long green socks. We wear white shirts and we've got a dark red sweater for when it gets cold. My sister's uniform is different. She wears a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.

Student E:
Our uniform is a dark blue skirt for the girls or dark blue shorts for the boys, a pale blue cotton shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests[7] or jackets. I like my uniform!

2 Read the blog again and complete the sentences:

اقرأ المنشور السابق مرة أخرى واكمل الجمل:

1. At Student A's school, students wear black leather shoes.
2. At Student B's school, the girls wear a blue and white checked skirts.
3. In summer, students at Student C's school can wear .... gray skirts.
4. The boys at Student D's school wear .... green socks.
5. The girls and boys at Student E's school all wear dark .... jackets.

3 Read and add one more adjective to each row:

اقرأ واضف أكثر من صفة فى كل صف:

When we use adjectives, we put them in this way: عندما نستخدم الصفات نضعهم فى الترتيب الصحيح		
1	size	big, small, ...
2	age	old, new, ...
3	color	black, white, ...
4	material	cotton, linen, ...

4 Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct order:

ضع الصفات فى التى بين الاقواس فى الترتيب الصحيح:

1. She wore a green cotton dress. (cotton, green)
2. He had to wear an old orange hat. (old, orange)
3. Dad bought me a .... galabeya. (new, white)
4. The shoemaker made .... shoes. (small, leather)
5. I bought a .... jacket for the party. (new, green)

5 Write a description of your favorite clothes. Include adjectives and make sure they are in the correct order:

اكتب وصف للابسك المفضلة : استخدم الصفات وتأكد أنها فى الترتيب الصحيح:

My favorite clothes are ....

I have a, ..., which is ....

I also like ....

They are my favorite because ....

6 Which countries are these clothes from? Look and match:

من أى البلاد هذه الملابس؟ أنظر وصل:

Finland - India - Japan

1 
2 
3 

....

7 Look and read. What is the Mexican hat called?

انظر وأقرا. ماذا تسمي القبعة المكسيكية؟

CLOTHES IN MEXICO(1)



These girls are wearing traditional Mexican(2) dresses. Look! They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Girls in Mexico wear dresses like these during feasts(3) and celebrations(4).

Mexican girls love bright colors(5). Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes. People in Mexico wear hats to protect(6) their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero - it's a traditional Mexican hat. There are lots of different styles of sombrero. Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.



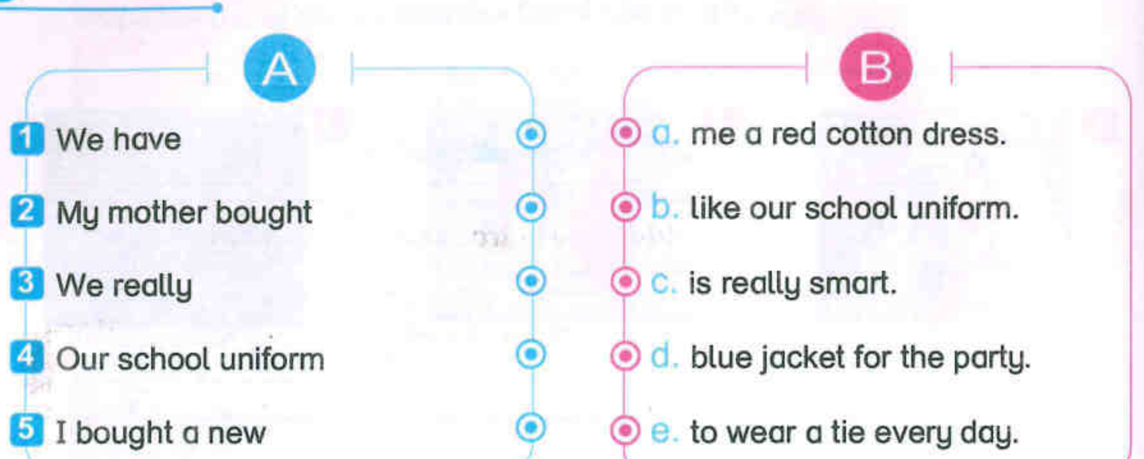
Arabic Meaning

١- دولة المكسيك
٢- مكسيكى
٣- أثناء الأعياد
٤- احتفالات
٥- ألوان زاهية
٦- يحمى



Activities

1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 We have	a. me a red cotton dress.
2 My mother bought	b. like our school uniform.
3 We really	c. is really smart.
4 Our school uniform	d. blue jacket for the party.
5 I bought a new	e. to wear a tie every day.

2 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

cool - white - jacket

My favorite clothes are T-shirts and shorts. I have a green ❶ .... I also like my ❷ .... cotton socks. They are my favorite because they are really ❸ ....

3 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. my - I - uniform - like - school.

----

2. wears - My - shoes - leather - pair of - a new - sister.

----

3. bought - Hisham's father - a white - galabeya - cotton.

----

4. girls - bright - Mexican - colors - love.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



Your school uniform

boys - wear - blue - shirt - trousers - girls - skirts

----

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. do you like your school uniform, badr

----

2. these are my brother s favorite clothes



Review

Clothes ملابس


T-shirt
تى شيرت


sunglasses
نظارة شمس


swimming shorts
شورت سباحة (مايوه)


scarf
كوفية (شال)


sweater
بلوفر


sneakers
حذاء رياض


galabeya
جلابية


necklace
عقد


pajamas
بيجامة


coat
بالطو



spotted
منقط


striped
مخطط / مقلم


suit
بدلة

crown
تاج

vest
صديرى


belt
حزام


tie
رابطة عنق (كرافتة)

Natural Features مظاهر طبيعية


mountain
جبل


glacier
كتلة جليدية


river
نهر


sand dunes
كثبان رملية

flood
فيضان


rainforest
غابة استوائية

desert
صحراء

waterfall
شلال


Nile Delta
دلتا النيل


Fayoum Depression
منخفض الفيوم


Nile Valley
وادى النيل

Other words كلمات أخرى

trip	رحلة قصيرة
suitcase	شنطة سفر
uniform	زى موحد
canal	قناة مائية / ترعة
lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس
river banks	ضفاف النهر
oasis	واحة
sculptures	تماثيل منحوتة
whales	حيتان

Egyptian clothing	ملابس مصرية
popular	شائع
costume	زى خاص
special festival	احتفال خاص
shoemaker	صانع احذية
elf (elves)	جنى صغير / جن
kindness	عطف
celebrations	احتفالات

Adjectives صفات

favorite	مفضل
exciting	شيق
excited	متشوق - متحمس
kind	طيب
honest	أمين
poor	فقير
tired	متعب
perfect	رائع

cool	رائع / بارد
comfortable	مريح
beautiful	جميل
delicious	لذيذ
amazed	مذهول
surprised	مندهش
new	جديد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
remember	يتذكر	remembered
pack	يعبئ (شنط سفر)	packed
stretch	يمتد	stretched
connect to	يتصل / يربط بـ	connected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
take	يأخذ	took
see	يرى	saw
wear	يرتدى	wore
give	يعطى	gave
know	يعرف	knew
run	يجرى	ran

Unit 3 How do I look?

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
change	يتغير	changed
reach	يصل	reached
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
tell	يخبر	told
leave	يغادر / يترك	left
say	يقول	said
grow	يزرع	grew
lie	يقع (في مكان ما)	lay

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

فاعل (كل الضمائر) + will ('ll) + inf.

◉ يستخدم للتعبير عن شيء سوف يحدث في المستقبل.

- She'll pack her suitcases tomorrow.

◉ وفي النفي نستخدم:

فاعل + will not (= won't) + inf.

- You won't need your coat.

◉ وفي السؤال بـ (هل....؟) نستخدم:

Will + فاعل + inf.....?

- Will I need my scarf?

Yes, you will. :إجابة مختصرة مثبتة

No, you won't. :إجابة مختصرة منفية

◉ نستخدم **to + inf.** للتعبير عن الغرض من فعل شيء:

- I went to the market to buy fruit.

◉ تذكر ترتيب الصفات.

size (1) + age (2) + color (3) + material (4)

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

للسؤال عن شيء أو طلب شيء بأسلوب مهذب نستخدم

Can you + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- Can you give me some information?

وللرد:

- Yes, of course. What do you want to know?
- Oh, sure.

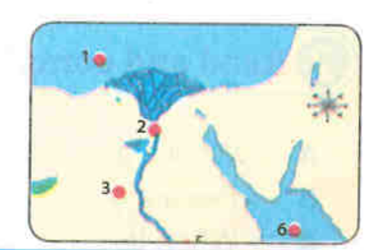
Writing Skills مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 2
My country (Egypt)

(1) Egypt is a very beautiful country. The Nile runs through the country. The Red Sea lies on Egypt's east coast. Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It's a modern city. I love my country very much.



Lesson 4
The Elves and the Shoemaker

(2) Once upon a time, an honest shoemaker lived in town. One night the shoemaker was tired. He cut the leather and went to his bed. The following morning he found amazing shoes on the table. That night he hid and saw two little elves making the shoes.



Lesson 5
My school uniform

(3) I like my school uniform. Boys wear white shirts and blue trousers. They have to wear a blue tie every day. The girls wear white shirts and blue skirts. Our school uniform is really smart.



Activity - Unit 3
Traditional Egyptian clothes

(4) Galabeyas are the popular traditional Egyptian clothes. The galabeya is a long white robe. Galabeyas are beautiful and cool. Galabeyas have hidden pockets. We wear galabeyas in special festivals.





AZHAR EXERCISES الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose: استمع وأختر:

1. Galabeyas are made from .... (cotton - metal - plastic)
2. Most men and boys wear .... in Eid. (shorts - galabeyas - pockets)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below: أقرأ وأكمل:

wear - celebrate - striped

A : What's your favorite clothes?
B : I've got a -- dress.
A : When do you -- it?
B : I wear it to -- Sham El-Nessim.

C- Reading

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: أقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

The Nile Valley is the area of land on the banks of the Nile River. It is very good for growing crops like wheat, dates, and beans. Many people say that the Nile Valley is like a lotus flower, the river and the river banks are the stem of the flower and the Nile Delta is the flower.

Choose the correct answer:

1. The Nile Valley is on the .... of the Nile River. (fossils - banks - canals)
2. People think the river banks are the .... of the flower. (root - stem - soil)
3. The Nile Valley is .... for growing crops. (good - not good - bad)

D- The Reader

4 Read and write (True) or (False): اقرأ وأكتب صح أم خطأ:

		True	False
1	Amir's pet is a hamster.		
2	Amir found a reptile club nearby.		

E- Usage

5 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Hisham used a pen .... his homework.
   a to write b writing c wrote
2. Yesterday, Hazem .... a new suticase.
   a buy b bought c buys





Activity ON Unit 3

1 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. It .... be very sunny tomorrow.
   a is b does c will
2. Sculptures were made by the ....
   a rock b wind c soil
3. Ahmed left the park .... the train.
   a to catch b catch c catching
4. When it's hot, I wear ....
   a shoes b a jacket c shorts
5. The Nile .... looks like a triangle .
   a Valley b Depression c Delta

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Noha's wearing	a. to protect our eyes.
2 Galabeyas are	b. a crown on her head.
3 We wear sunglasses	c. usually made from cotton.
4 The shoemaker's shoes	d. different uniforms in my school.
5 Boys and girls have	e. were amazing.

3 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

stretches - triangle - fertile

The Nile Delta is in Lower Egypt. It's the ❶ .... soil between the two branches of the Nile. It ❷ .... from Alexandria to Port Said and it looks like a ❸ ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister's wedding party was yesterday. My sister wore a white beautiful dress. She had a crown on her head. She looked like a princess. She had white gloves on her hands. There was a gold necklace around her neck. I wore a black suit and black leather shoes. All the people at the party were wearing special clothes. We had delicious meals. The party finished at twelve o'clock at night. We sang and danced happily. Then, my sister went to her new house.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What did the sister look like?

----

2. Where did the sister go after the party?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 My sister's necklace was made of leather.		
4 My sister had a crown on her head.		

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. has - many - Fayoum - lakes.

----

2. need - a coat - Will - and - I - a scarf?

----

3. did - pack - What - for - you - the holiday?

----

4. is - Egypt - capital - Cairo - the - of.



6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



Traditional Egyptian clothes

galabeyas - popular - long robe - cool - pockets - hidden

----

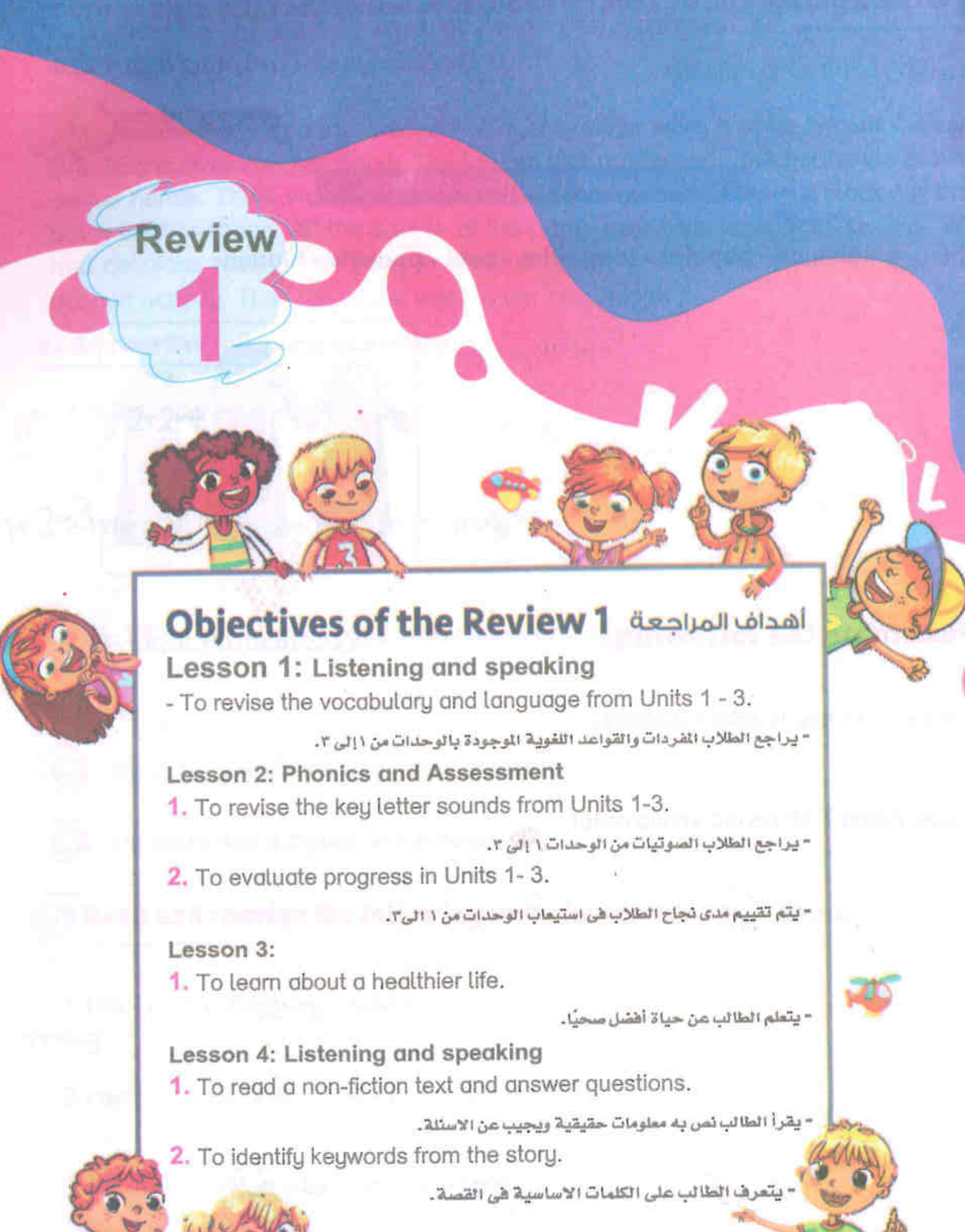
7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. we won t need to take sweaters

----

2. how many T-shirts did salwa order



Objectives of the Review 1 أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع الطلاب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 1-3.

- يراجع الطلاب الصوتيات من الوحدات ١ إلى ٣.

2. To evaluate progress in Units 1- 3.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطلاب في استيعاب الوحدات من ١ الى٣.

Lesson 3:

1. To learn about a healthier life.

- يتعلم الطالب عن حياة أفضل صحيًا.

Lesson 4: Listening and speaking

1. To read a non-fiction text and answer questions.

- يقرأ الطالب نص به معلومات حقيقية ويجيب عن الاسئلة.

2. To identify keywords from the story.

- يتعرف الطالب على الكلمات الاساسية في القصة.



★ Units 1 , 2 & 3

1 Listening and point: استمع وأشر:







نص الاستماع

1- beans	2- pineapple	3- chocolate
4- pour	5- mix	6- squash
7- football	8- kung fu	9- pajamas
10- mountain	11- swimming shorts	12- sweater
13- sunglasses	14- necklace	15- sneakers

Start



Finish

Review 1

2 Look and write:
أنظر واكتب (كالمثال):

- اكتب جمل عن الصور السابقة في Ex.1:

You mix the eggs and the flour to make pizza.





I've got striped pajamas.

3 Read and circle:
اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة:

1. It's very hot and dry in the **desert / rainforest**.
2. Sometimes when there is a lot of rain there is a **flood / river**.
3. Fayoum has many **lakes / glaciers**.
4. The sculptures in the White Desert were made by **soil / wind** erosion.

4 Make sentences in the past simple:
كوّن جملاً باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط:

1. Mom/ cook /molokhia / last Friday
   Mom cooked molokhia last Friday.
2. Salma / go / to the store/with her mom
   Salma went to the store with her mom.
3. My / grandma / travel / Port Said / last weekend
   ----
4. I /get /a new phone / a week ago
   ----

5 Write about your favorite clothes. What are they? How do they look? Why do you like them? Write 30- 40 words:
اكتب عن ملابسك المفضلة. ما هم؟ وكيف شكلها ولماذا تحب هذه الملابس؟ اكتب من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠ كلمة:





Lesson 2 ★ Units 1 , 2 & 3

1 Listen and circle:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الصورة الصحيحة:

Tapescript نص الاستماع استمع إلى النص:

1- sneakers	2- tennis lessons	3- oranges
4- corrots	5- pajamas	6- swimming

Mom : Are you ready, Mariam? We need to buy a lot of things in town.
Mariam : Yes, I'm ready. Remember I need some new .
Mom : Oh, yes, for your lessons next week. I need to get food from the market, too. We need and. Oh, and I also need to buy some new for Tarek. His are too small.
Mariam : Do we have time to go today, Mom?
Mom : Not today, Mariam. But we can go on the weekend.

2 Listen again and answer:
استمع مرة أخرى للنص السابق وأجب:

1. What clothes do Mom and Mariam need to buy? They need to buy sneakers.
2. What fruit does Mom need to buy? She needs to buy oranges.
3. What vegetables does Mom need to buy? --
4. Can Mariam go swimming today? --

3 What did Nabila do yesterday? Look and write:
ماذا فعلت نبيلة بالأمس؟ انظر واكتب:

1. Nabila got up at 6 am.
   Nabila went to school at eight o'clock.
2. --
3. --
4. --

1 2

3



4



4 Listen and write the words you hear. Then match:

استمع واكتب الكلمات التى تراها ثم صل:

استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

1- tiger 2- window 3- grape 4- spider
5- egg 6- lime 7- robot 8- cake

1- tiger .... (a)
2- w .... (b)
3- g .... (c) 1
4- s .... (d)
5- e .... (e)
6- l .... (f)
7- r .... (g)
8- c .... (h)

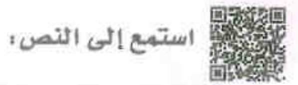
5 Listen again. Tick the two-syllable words with long vowels:

استمع لنص الاستماع السابق مرة أخرى. وضع دائرة حول الكلمات ذات المقطعين الصوتيين التي تحتوي على الأصوات المتحركة الممتدة ذات المقطعين:

6 Listen and write the verbs in the past tense in the correct box. Then listen and check:

استمع واكتب هذه الأفعال في زمن الماضي البسيط وضعها في الجدول المناسب حسب نطق نهايات (ed) في كل فعل:

enjoy - paint - play - stop - want - work



استمع إلى النص:



Tapescript نص الاستماع

1- They enjoyed the play.
2- She painted a picture.
3- The boys played football.
4- We stopped at the traffic light.
5- Jana wanted an ice cream.
6- He worked as a taxi driver.

/d/	/t/	/id/
enjoyed	worked	wanted

7 Look and read. Then complete for you. Use the prompts or your own ideas:

انظر واقرأ. ثم أكمل عن نفسك. استخدام الصور الآتية لتكوين جملا من أفكارك






I'll play football next week.

....

My mother will make a cake tomorrow.

....

I'm good at drawing.

I'm bad at swimming.





Lesson 3 ★ Units 1, 2 & 3

1 Work in groups. Think about how we can be healthier. Look at the pictures and discuss:

اعمل فى مجموعات. فكر كيف تكون بصحة أفضل. انظر للصور وناقش:

Key vocabulary

healthier life	حياة صحية
include	يشتمل على
junk food/ fast food	طعام يحتوي علي سكريات ودهون أكثر
perhaps	ربما
not only	ليس فقط
mean	يقصد - يعني
fewer cars	سيارات أقل
less pollution	تلوث أقل

1 
2 
3 
4 
5 
6 

How can we live a healthier life?

There are many things we can do to live a healthier life. For example, we can include fruit and vegetables in our meals. They are healthy and delicious. Junk food isn't good for us so we shouldn't eat it a lot. Also, try to do some exercise. Perhaps you love swimming or football? Any kind of exercise is good for you. You could ride your bike to school. Not only is this good exercise, but it means there are fewer cars on the road and less pollution. Play games and have fun with your friends!

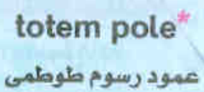


Lesson 4 ★ Non-Fiction Come to Canada!

1 Look. Which country are these things from?

انظر من أى دولة تأتى هذه الأشياء؟

1 
totem pole*
عمود رسوم طوطمي



2 
maple leaf
ورقة نبات القيقب

3 
maple syrup
شراب القيقب السكري

4 
bear
دب



Vocabulary

Canada	مدينة كندا
Ottawa	اتاوا (عاصمة كندا)
Russia	روسيا
Canadian police uniform	زي البوليس الكندي
awesome uniform	زي رائع
wide brim	حافة عريضة
landscapes	مناظر طبيعية
cold woods	غابات باردة
climates	مناخ
scary	مخيف
safe	أمان / آمن
thick coat	بالطو سميك
pancakes	فطائر

Study the following

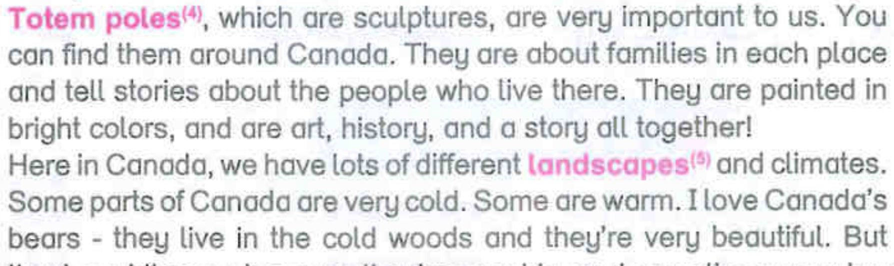
1. We have lots of different landscapes and climates.
   - لدينا مناظر طبيعية ومناخ مختلف.
2. The Canadian police uniform is an awesome uniform.
   - زي البوليس الكندي رائع.
3. They wear a light brown leather hat.
   - هم يرتدون قبعة من الجلد لونها بني فاتح.
4. It has a wide brim to protect their faces from the sun.
   - لديها حافة عريضة لتحمي وجوههم من الشمس.
5. In the colder parts of Canada, they wear a very thick coat to keep warm.
   - في الأماكن الباردة من كندا يرتدون بالطو سميك ليشعروا بالدفئ.

* الطوطم هو أى كيان يمثل دور الرمز للقبيلة وأحيانًا يقدس بأعتباره المؤسس أو الحامى.

Review 1

2 Listen and read. Where is Maisie from? What does she say about the things in Exercise 1?

استمع واقرأ. من أى بلد (Maisie)؟ ماذا تقول عن الأشياء في التمرين السابق:



Hi, I'm Maisie. I'm from Canada and I love my country. I'm going to tell you some special things about it. Here we go!
Canada is north of North America and its capital is **Ottawa**[1]. It's the second largest country in the world, after **Russia**[2]. It has a really cool red and white flag with a **maple leaf**[3] on it.
Totem poles[4], which are sculptures, are very important to us. You can find them around Canada. They are about families in each place and tell stories about the people who live there. They are painted in bright colors, and are art, history, and a story all together!
Here in Canada, we have lots of different **landscapes**[5] and climates. Some parts of Canada are very cold. Some are warm. I love Canada's bears - they live in the cold woods and they're very beautiful. But they're a bit scary because they're very big, and sometimes very hungry!
The last thing I wanted to tell you about is **maple syrup**[6]: it's sweet and very nice, and we eat it on **pancakes**[7] for breakfast a lot. You have to try it!
The last thing I wanted to tell you about is maple syrup: it's sweet and very nice, and we eat it on pancakes for breakfast a lot. You have to try it!

Arabic Meaning

١- اتاوا (عاصمة كندا)
٢- روسيا
٣- ورقة نبات القيقب
٤- عمود رسوم طوطم
٥- مناظر طبيعية
٦- شراب القيقب السكري
٧- فطائر



3 Listen, read, and color:

استمع إلى النص الآتي. واقرأ ثم لوّن:

استمع إلى النص:



Hi, it's Maisie again! One more thing I want to tell you about is our police. They're very kind and help keep us all safe. They have an **awesome**[1] uniform, too - they wear it on special days.
First of all, they wear a light brown leather hat. It has a **wide brim**[2] to protect their faces from the sun. Then, they have a beautiful red jacket with a dark brown leather belt and long dark brown leather gloves. Their pants are dark blue and have a yellow **stripe**[3] down the side. Their boots are dark brown leather, too.
On normal days, their uniform is quite different – they wear a gray shirt, dark blue pants, and a hat. In the colder parts of Canada, they wear a very thick coat to keep warm.

Arabic Meaning

١- رائع
٢- حافة عريضة
٣- خط (تقليم)



Activity on Units (1,2 & 3)

1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Can I have .... limes, please?
   a any b some c a
2. How about .... healthy food?
   a buy b buys c buying
3. We can play tennis at the tennis ....
   a court b pitch c pool
4. I bought .... to keep me warm.
   a sneakers b glasses c coats
5. Are there .... carrots?
   a some b any c a

2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 We can make	a. playing squash.
2 I'm good at	b. delicious juice from mangoes.
3 Cotton	c. in Egypt's White Desert.
4 I'll wear a striped	d. grows in the Nile Delta.
5 There are amazing sculptures	e. dress in Sham El-Nessim .

3 Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

chickpeas - delicious - ingredients

Koshari is my favorite meal. It has some ❶.............................. such as pasta, rice and ❷.............................. I like koshari because it is ❸..............................

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

Review 1

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is a great honor. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. Hedaya won many important awards. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

1- Hedaya won the .... medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016.
a metal b gold c bronze

2- Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian .... player.
a squash b taekwondo c karate

B- Answer the following questions:

3. When was Hedaya Malak born? ____________________

4. What did Hedaya win at the age of fourteen? ____________________

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. she - Why - important - is? ____________________
2. squash - She's - good at - very - playing? ____________________
3. seeds - Put - bags - the - into. ____________________
4. tidied - I - yesterday - room - my. ____________________

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

Football

favorite - good at - friends - football pitch - football boots

____
____
____
____
____



7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. what will hedaya do next ____________________
2. my father muhammad is a teacher ____________________

Theme 2

Myself and others

Unit 4

Looking after our world

الاعتناء بعالمنا



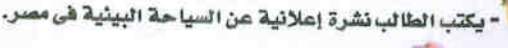




Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different landscapes.
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن المناظر الطبيعية المختلفة.
2. Learn about Elephantine Island.
- يعرف الطالب معلومات عن جزيرة الفنتين (بمدينة أسوان).
3. Use sentences in the past continuous.
- يستخدم الطالب عبارات أو جمل فى زمن الماضى المستمر.
4. Learn about greenhouse gases and climate change.
- يعرف الطالب معلومات عن غازات الاحتباس الحرارى وتغير المناخ.
5. Learn and talk about eco-tourism in Egypt.
- يتعلم الطالب ويتحدث عن السياحة البيئية فى مصر.
6. Learn about number sequences. يتعلم الطالب عن التسلسل الرقمى.
7. Learn how to say three consonants together.
- يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق ثلاثة حروف ساكنة معاً.
8. Learn to correct spelling mistakes. يتعلم الطالب أن يصحح أخطاؤه الإملائية.
9. Read and listen to a short story about a community garden.
- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة عن حديقة عامة فى محيط المجتمع الذى يعيش فيه.
10. Write a flyer about eco-tourism in Egypt.
- يكتب الطالب نشرة إعلانية عن السياحة البيئية فى مصر.







★ My visit to Elephantine Island





استمع إلى المفردات


mountain جبل


lake بحيرة


waterfall شلال


island جزيرة


forest غابة


coral reefs شعاب مرجانية


Aswan Botanical Garden حديقة النباتات بأسوان


Temple of Philae معبد فيلة

lots	الكثير
sunset	غروب الشمس
Tombs of the Nobles	مقابر النبلاء

rare	نادر
reign	فترة حُكم



shape	شكل
history	تاريخ
calendar	نتيجة (تقويم)
traffic	المركبات في حركة المرور
city	مدينة كبيرة
town	مدينة صغيرة

trip	رحلة قصيرة
visit (n)	زيارة
walk (n)	تمشية
particularly	خصوصًا
felucca	مركب شراعي (فلوكة)
full of	مليء بـ

Adjectives صفات



fantastic	رائع
calm / quiet	هادئ
clean	نظيف

beautiful	جميل
dicorated	مزين / مزخرف
famous	مشهور



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
miss	يفتقد شخص	missed
try	يحاول	tried
walk	يسير (يمشي)	walked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
understand	يفهم	understood
find	يجد	found
go	يذهب	went

Study the following

1. The Elephantine Island is full of history.
   - جزيرة إليفنتين تزخر بالتاريخ.
2. There's lots to see.
   - هناك الكثير لتراه.
3. It's the most fantastic place!
   - إنها المكان الأكثر روعة.
4. It's the oldest part of Aswan.
   - إنها أقدم جزء في مدينة أسوان.
5. After that, we went to Aswan Museum.
   - بعد ذلك، ذهبنا إلى متحف أسوان.
6. We can go for long walks.
   - يمكننا التمشية لمسافات طويلة.
7. I was travelling by boat.
   - كنت مسافرًا بالقارب.
8. Can't wait to see you soon.
   - لا أطيق الانتظار لأراك قريبًا.
9. The sunsets are fantastic, particularly from a felucca.
   - أوقات غروب الشمس رائعة وخصوصًا وأنت في مركب شراعي.
10. They have beautiful brightly decorated houses.
    - لديهم منازل جميلة ومزينة بألوان زاهية.
11. We're going to walk to the Tombs of the Nobles.
    - سوف نمشي إلى مقابر النبلاء.

1 Listen and read the postcard. Where did Nagwa go?

استمع إلى واقرأ البطاقة البريدية. أين ذهبت نجوى؟



استمع إلى المفردات



Tapescript نص الاستماع

Hi Dalia!

How are you? I'm missing you! I'm on Elephantine Island[3] and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's **lots** to see. Yesterday, I was travelling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. – we think it's the shape!

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. Infact, all the island is full of history. After that, we went to the Aswan Museum[4]. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very **rare** calendar from the reign of Thutmose III[5].

But it's not only about history – it's a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet, and the air is clean. We can go for long walks. There are no forests but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green.



Temple of Philae[2]

The **sunsets** are fantastic, particularly from a felucca.

We were walking in one of the Nubian villages[6] this morning, They have beautiful brightly decorated houses. We had lunch there looking at the Nile. Tomorrow is our last morning, so we're going to walk to the Tombs of the Nobles[7] through the desert. I'll be so sad to leave.



Aswan Botanical Garden[1]

Can't wait to see you soon!

Nagwa

Arabic Meaning

١- حديقة النباتات بأسوان
٢- معبد فيله
٣- جزيرة إليفنتين
٤- متحف أسوان
٥- تحتمس الثالث
٦- قرى نوبية
٧- مقابر النبلاء

2 Listen again and answer the questions:

استمع مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1. Did Nagwa have a good trip?

----

2. Why is she feeling sad?

----

3 Look and write. Use the words in the box:

انظر واكتب. استخدم الكلمات الآتية:

forest - island - lake - ~~mountain~~ - coral reefs - waterfall

1.  mountain
2.  ------------
3.  ------------
4.  ------------
5.  ------------
6. ------------

4 Work with a partner. Look and discuss:

اشترك مع زميلك. انظر وناقش:

1. Alexandria is a city. Can you name other Egyptian cities?

----

2. Dahab is a town. Can you name other Egyptian towns?

----

3. The beautiful Nubian villages near Aswan are famous. Can you name other Egyptian villages?

----

4. Do you live in a city, town, or village? Which do you like best?



Alexandria



Dahab



Nubian village

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Look at these rocks from the White Desert. What can you see? People often call them 'chicken and mushroom' rocks!

انظر إلى هذه الصخور من الصحراء البيضاء.
ماذا ترى؟ غالبًا ما يطلق عليها الناس صخور الدجاج والفطر!



Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with the following words:

اقرأ واكمل المحادثة بالكلمات الآتية:

missing - How - fine

Heba : Hi Mona!
Mona : Hi Heba! ❶ .... are you?
Heba : I'm ❷ .... Thank you.
Mona : I'm ❸ .... you.
Heba : Me, too.

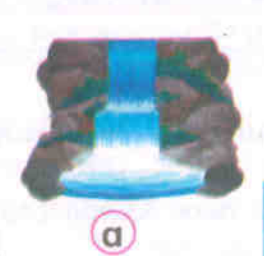
2 Match:

صل:

A

1. mountain
2. island
3. coral reefs
4. waterfall
5. lake

B



(a)

(b)

(c)


(d)

(e)

3 Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. There's .... to see in Elephantine Island.
   a lot b a lots c lots
2. We visited the .... of Philae.
   a Tower b Temple c garden

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

3. We can .... for long walks.
   a play b look c go
4. The Elephantine Island is .... of history.
   a full b fall c fill
5. We enjoyed watching the .... at 6 p.m in Aswan.
   a sunrise b sunburn c sunset
6. These coins are expensive because they are ....
   a rare b terrible c poor

4 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



Your city (Aswan)

fantastic - museums - traffic - quiet - love



- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i m missing you

- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

2. did nagwa have a good trip

- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

Lesson 2 ★ What were you doing?

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 Past continuous زمن الماضي المستمر

◉ نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن شئ حدث واستمر في فترة زمنية في الماضي

◉ يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر كما يلى:

①	②	③
I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد +	was	+ verb + ing
You / We / They / اسم جمع +	were	

- I was travelling by boat to the island with my friends.
- We were trying to understand the name of the island.

2 الاستفهام Question

◉ يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر في الاستفهام كالآتي:

①	②	③
(كلمة استفهام) +	was + I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد	+ verb + ing...?
	were + you / we / they / اسم جمع	

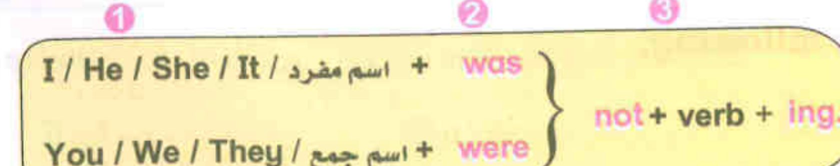
A : What were you doing? ماذا كنت تفعل؟

B : I was trying to understand the "Elephantine" name.

- Was she listening to music?
  - Yes, she was. - No, she wasn't.
- Were they making fatta?
  - Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

3 النفى Negative

◉ لنفى الفعل فى زمن الماضي المستمر نضع (not) بين (was / were) والفعل:




①	②	③
I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد +	was	not + verb + ing.
You / We / They / اسم جمع +	were	

- I was not swimming in the sea.
- We were not listening to music.

was not = wasn't were not = weren't

Keywords

while / as	أثناء / بينما	/ when	عندما
while / as ⟶	ماضي مستمر	⟶	ماضي بسيط
when ⟶	ماضي بسيط	⟶	ماضي مستمر

1. While we were looking at old things, we found a rare calendar.

1. We were looking at old things when we found a rare calendar.

ملحوظة

- عند إضافة (ing) للفعل في الماضي المستمر يلاحظ الآتي:

١ - إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e) غير منطوقه تحذف (e) ويضاف (ing)

make ⟶ making / take ⟶ taking

لكن لاحظ: see ⟶ seeing / be ⟶ being

٢ - عند انتهاء الفعل بـ حرف ساكن + حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ويضاف بعده (ing).

swim ⟶ swimming / shop ⟶ shopping

1 Read and choose: اقرأ واختر:

1. We were trying / trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name.

----

2. I were / was walking in one of the Nubian villages this morning.

----

2 Complete the table about the past continuous with the words in the box: أكمل الجدول عن زمن الماضي المستمر بالكلمات الآتية:

she - Was - were

I	was	listening to the radio.
you / we / they	(1)------------	making a cake.
he / (2)--------- / it	was	swimming in the sea.
Question		
Was	I	listening to music?
Were	you / we / they	making fatta?
(3)-------------	he / she / it	swimming in a lake?

3 Circle the correct word: ضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة :

- We use the past continuous for something that happened and **stopped / continued over a period of time** in the past.

4 Look and write. Use the past continuous: انظر واكتب. استخدم زمن الماضي المستمر :

1. The fox __was sleeping__ **(sleep)**.
2. The fish ______ **(swim)**.
3. The tiger ______ **(drink)** water.
4. The people ______ **(walk)**.
5. I ______ **(watch)** everyone.
6. We ______ **(have)** a great time.
7. ______ the cat ______ **(run)**?

5 What was Mona doing at different times yesterday? Look and write. Use the phrases in the box: ماذا كانت تفعل منى في أوقات مختلفة أمس؟ استخدم العبارات الآتية :

arrive at school - get up - have lunch - study English



1- 6 am: She was getting up.



2- 8 am: ______



3- 10 am: ______



4- 3 pm: ______

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

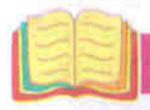
climate change	تغير المناخ
greenhouse effect	الاحتباس الحراري
greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحراري
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي
suitable	مناسب
greenhouse	صوبة زراعية

normal	طبيعي / عادي
livestock farming	تربية الماشية
blanket	غطاء (بطانية)
cause	سبب
result	نتيجة

Other words كلمات أخرى

planet	كوكب
temperature	درجة الحرارة
the Earth	كوكب الأرض
warmer	أكثر دفئًا
scientist	عالِم
period	فترة زمنية
factory	مصنع
transportation	وسائل النقل
sun's heat	حرارة الشمس
go back	يعود / يرتد
space	الفضاء

go up	يرتفع
carbon dioxide	غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون
water vapor	بخار الماء
methane	غاز الميثان (غاز المستنقعات)
sea level	مستوى سطح البحر
crops	محاصيل
tropical plants	نباتات إستوائية
surface	سطح
go out	يخرج
worried	قلق



Definitions تعريفات

greenhouse gases غازات الاحتباس الحراري	gases like carbon dioxide, water vapor and methane
greenhouse effect الاحتباس الحراري	a process عملية in which greenhouse gases make the temperature warmer to grow crops faster
climate change تغير المناخ	a change to the normal weather of the Earth over a long period of time

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة — Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
arrive	يصل	arrived	sleep	ينام	slept
change	يغير / يتغير	changed	get	يصبح	got
happen	يحدث	happened	get up	يستيقظ	got up
cause	يسبب	caused	keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept
produce	ينتج	produced	rise	يرتفع	rose
die	يموت	died	grow	ينمو / يزرع	grew
explain	يشرح	explained	shine	تسطع (الشمس)	shone

Study the following

1. Scientists think that people are causing climate change.
   - يعتقد العلماء أن الناس هم من يتسببون في تغير المناخ.
2. Factories produce too many greenhouse gases.
   - تُخرج / تُنتج المصانع العديد من غازات الاحتباس الحراري.
3. The Earth's temperature goes up.
   - ترتفع درجة حرارة الأرض.
4. A greenhouse is made of glass so it keeps all the plants warm.
   - تصنع الصوبة الزراعية من الزجاج لذلك تحتفظ بالنباتات دافئة.
5. The greenhouse gases work as a blanket around the Earth.
   - تعمل غازات الاحتباس الحراري كغطاء (بطانية) حول كوكب الأرض.
6. Greenhouse gases are important to keep our planet at the suitable temperature for life.
   - الغازات المسببة للاحتباس الحراري مهمة للحفاظ على كوكبنا في درجة حرارة مناسبة للحياة.
7. We produce too many greenhouse gases through factories, transportation, building things, and livestock farming.
   - نحن ننتج الكثير من الغازات المسببة للاحتباس الحراري من خلال المصانع ، ووسائل النقل ، وبناء الأشياء ، وتربية الماشية
8. The greenhouse gases keep more of the sun's heat inside the Earth.
   - تحافظ غازات الاحتباس الحرارى على قدر أكبر من حرارة الشمس داخل الأرض.
9. The greenhouse gases stop the heat from going back to the space.
   - تمنع غازات الاحتباس الحراري الحرارة من العودة إلى الفضاء.
10. Animals may lose their food because plants die.
    - قد تفقد الحيوانات طعامها لأن النباتات تموت.
11. Sea level rises, so people can lose their homes.
    - يرتفع مستوى سطح البحر ، لذلك قد يفقد الناس منازلهم.
12. We don't have enough rain and our crops can't grow.
    - ليس لدينا ما يكفي من الأمطار ومحاصيلنا لا يمكن أن تنمو.

1 Listen and read. What is climate change? استمع واقرأ . ما هو تغير المناخ؟

استمع إلى النص



Climate change[1]

Greenhouse gases[2] are important to keep our planet at the suitable[3] temperature for life. One hundred years ago, the Earth was getting a little warmer, and the atmosphere[4] was changing a little. But over the past 20 years, changes are happening faster and faster.

Scientists think that people are causing climate change - a change to the normal[5] weather of the Earth over a long period of time. We produce too many greenhouse gases through factories, transportation[6], building things, and livestock farming[7]. The greenhouse gases now keep more of the sun's heat inside the Earth, and stop this heat from going back[8] to the space. So the Earth's temperature goes up.

Greenhouse gases are gases like carbon dioxide, water vapor, and methane. So what are the results of climate change?

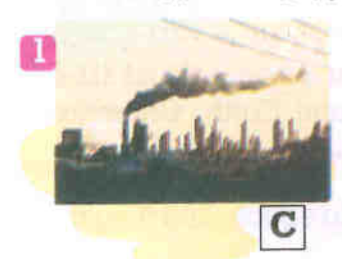
- Animals may lose their food because plants die.
- Sea level rises, so people can lose their homes.
- The climate becomes too hot. We don't have enough rain and our crops can't grow.

Arabic Meaning

١- تغير المناخ
٢- غازات الاحتباس الحراري
٣- مناسبة
٤- الغلاف الجوي
٥- طبيعي / عادي
٦- وسائل النقل
٧- تربية الماشية
٨- يرجع / يرتد

2 Read again. Do the things in the photos cause climate change? Or are they results of climate change? Put C (Cause) or R (Result)

اقرأ مرة أخرى. هل الأشياء في الصور سبب أم نتيجة لتغير المناخ ضع (C) للسبب و(R) للنتيجة :

1  C

2  ☐

3  ☐

4  ☐

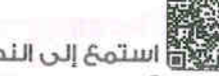
5  ☐

6  ☐

3 Listen and read the text. Why can't Laila do her homework?

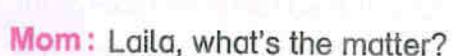
استمع إلى واقرأ النص. لماذا لا تستطيع ليلى عمل واجبها المنزلي؟





استمع إلى النص

Tapescript نص الاستماع



Mom: Laila, what's the matter?

Laila: Hi Mom. I'm feeling worried. I can't do my homework.

Mom: What's the problem?

Laila: I have to explain the greenhouse effect[1] and it's quite difficult.

Mom: OK, let me help. You know what a greenhouse[2] is, don't you? It's made of glass so it keeps all the plants inside it warm. This means that in cold countries, we can grow vegetables like tomatoes and tropical plants[3]. The temperature inside doesn't change and the plants grow.



Laila: Yes, but why is that the same as climate change?

Mom: Well, we have a natural greenhouse effect on Earth. There are gases in the atmosphere that keep the Earth warm so we can live on it. These are greenhouse gases. But now we have more and more of the greenhouse gases and the Earth is warming up too much.

Arabic Meaning

١- الاحتباس الحراري
٢- صوبة زراعية
٣- نباتات استوائية
٤- غطاء (بطانية)
٥- تسطع (الشمس)
٦- سطح الأرض

Laila: But why is it like a greenhouse?

Mom: The greenhouse gases work like a blanket[4] around Earth. Greenhouse gases allow the sun's light to shine[5] onto the Earth's surface[6], but they stop the heat of the sun from going out of the Earth to space, and they make the planet too hot.

Laila: Thanks, Mom! I understand the greenhouse effect better now!



Activities

1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The cat .... drinking milk.
   a were   b was   c are
2. We were .... a great time at the park.
   a have   b had   c having
3. .... the boys playing football?
   a Was   b football   c Is
4. At 12 am, I .... studying. I was sleeping.
   a was not   b were not   c is not
5. We keep the plants warm in a glass ....
   a house   b planet   c greenhouse
6. The temperature in the desert isn't .... for us to live.
   a suitable   b hot   c terrible
7. Scientists think that people are causing .... change.
   a weather   b climate   c greenhouse
8. Factories produce too many greenhouse ....
   a results   b blankets   c gases

2 Fill in the gaps using the words in the box:

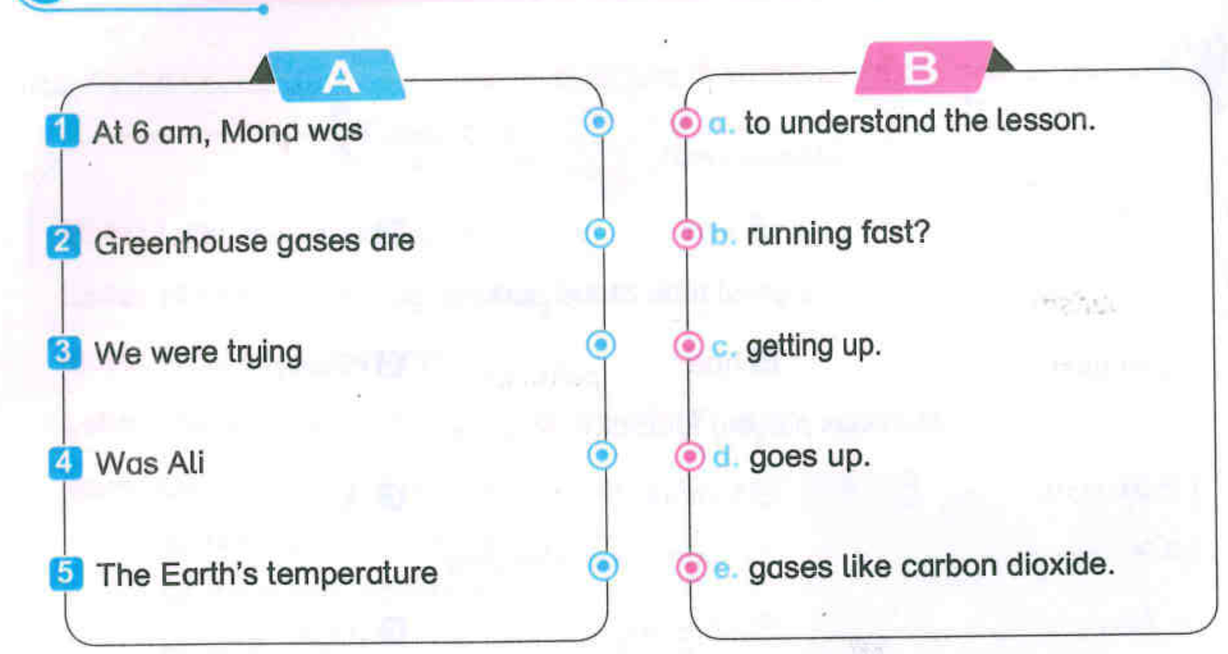
املأ الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

produce - change - farming

Scientists think that people are causing climate ❶ .... We ❷ .... too many greenhouse gases through factories, transportation, building things, and livestock ❸ ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

3 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 At 6 am, Mona was	a. to understand the lesson.
2 Greenhouse gases are	b. running fast?
3 We were trying	c. getting up.
4 Was Ali	d. goes up.
5 The Earth's temperature	e. gases like carbon dioxide.

4 Complete the sentences: أكمل الجمل:

1. Sara .... (practice) sports at 5 pm yesterday.
2. .... (Was) Jana and Nermeen cooking food in the kitchen?
3. Fady .... (was) studying math yesterday evening, he was ill.
4. The boys .... (play) football in the morning yesterday.

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i was visiting a nubian village

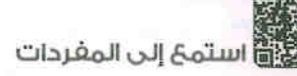
- -

2. was mona studying English

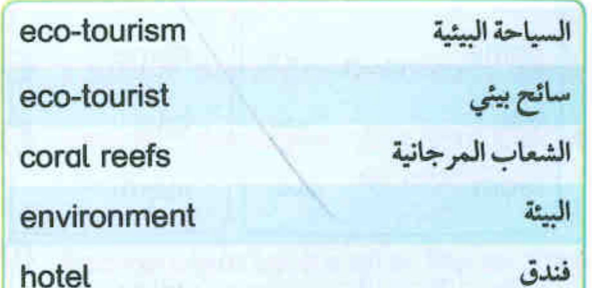
- -

Lesson 3 Eco-tourism



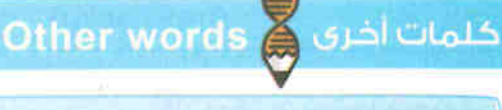


استمع إلى المفردات



eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية
eco-tourist	سائح بيئي
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
environment	البيئة
hotel	فندق

wildlife	الحياة البرية
pollution	التلوث
mathematician	عالِم في الرياضيات
dive (d)	يغطس



local people	السكان المحليون
journey	رحلة طويلة
culture	ثقافة / حضارة
historical places	أماكن تاريخية
exciting	مثير
look after	يعتني بـ
project	مشروع
presenter	مقدم برامج
tour guide	مرشد سياحي

oasis (oases)	واحة (واحات)
UNESCO	منظمة اليونيسكو
Eco village	قرية بها سياحة بيئية
pros	مميزات
cons	عيوب
comfortable	مريح
sea animals	حيوانات بحرية
Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة



Definitions تعريفات

Eco-tourism السياحة البيئية: It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
create	يخلق / ينشيء	created
damage	يتلف / يدمر	damaged
relate to	يتعلق بـ	related to
stay	يقيم	stayed
work out	يستنتج	worked out
preserve	يحفظ	preserved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
pay	يدفع مالاً	paid
see	يفهم - يرى	saw
come	يأتي	came
tell	يخبر	told
learn	يتعلم	learnt

Grammar قواعد لغوية

يمكن أن نستخدم حروف الجر **by - in - on** مع وسائل المواصلات كالآتي:

by - in - on مع وسائل المواصلات

by

by + وسيلة مواصلات (ليس بينهما فاصل)

by car - by train - by bus - etc.....

- ولكن نقول **on foot** بمعنى (سيرًا على الأقدام).

in - on

in + (a / an / the / my..... وسيلة مواصلات لا يمكن المشي داخلها (وبينهما فاصل

- **in a / my car - in a / the taxi.**

on + وسائل مواصلات يمكن المشي داخلها (بينهما فاصل)

- **on the bus - on the train -**

- لاحظ: **on my bike / horse**

Study the following

1. **Tourism gives jobs for local people.** - توفر السياحة فرص عمل للسكان المحليين.
2. **Tourism creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.** - تسبب السياحة الكثير من غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون نتيجة الرحلات الجوية.
3. **Tourism helps people learn about new cultures.** - تساعد السياحة الناس على التعرف على ثقافات جديدة.
4. **Tourism damages the natural environment.** - تضر السياحة بالبيئة الطبيعية.
5. **Tourism damages historical places or monuments.** - تضر السياحة بالأماكن التاريخية أو الآثار.
6. **Eco-tourism looks after the environment.** - تعتنى السياحة البيئية بالبيئة.
7. **Eco-tourism is not as comfortable as normal tourism.** - السياحة البيئية ليست مريحة مثل السياحة العادية.
8. **Eco-tourists like to travel by bikes.** - يحب السياح البيئيون السفر بالدراجات.
9. **Eco-tourists like to stay in small local hotels.** - يحب السياح البيئيون الإقامة في فنادق محلية صغيرة.
10. **Eco-tourists like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.** - يحب السياح البيئيون التعرف على مشاريع الحياة البرية المحلية والثقافة المحلية.

1 Think about tourism. Check (✓) the good things and cross (X) the bad things: ضع علامة (✓) أمام فوائد السياحة وعلامة (X) أمام أضرارها:

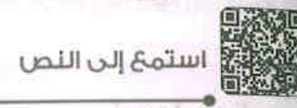
Tourism...

1. gives jobs for local people. ✓
2. creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.
3. helps people learn about new cultures.
4. damages the natural environment. 
5. damages historical places or monuments. 

2 Listen to Sherif. What is eco-tourism?

استمع إلى شريف. ما هي السياحة البيئية؟

استمع إلى النص





Presenter : Hello, Sherif. Thank you for coming to talk to us. Sherif is a tour guide[1] in Hurghada[2]. Tell us about eco-tourism[3], please. What is it?

Sherif : Hello, Dalia. Eco-tourism is very exciting. It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.

Presenter : How does it help the environment[4] and people?

Sherif : Eco-tourists[5] don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution[6] planes cause. They travel by train, on foot, or by bike.

Presenter : I see. Where do they stay?

Sherif : They don't like big hotels[7]. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

Presenter : What do they do when they travel?

Sherif : They like to learn about local wildlife[8] projects and local culture.

Presenter : Can you give me an example?

Sherif : Of course. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, preserving[9] the coral reefs and the sea animals. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive and how they can be with the animals.

Presenter : That sounds very good! Thank you for your time, Sherif.

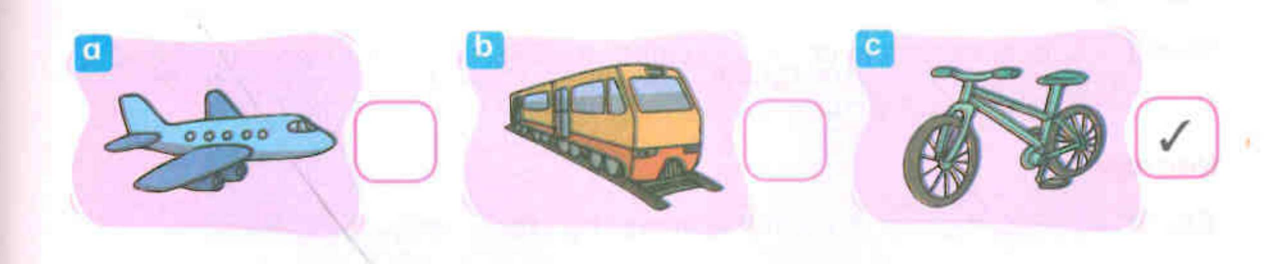
Arabic Meaning

١- مرشد سياحي
٢- مدينة الغردقة
٣- السياحة البيئية
٤- البيئة
٥- السائحون البيئيون
٦- التلوث
٧- فنادق
٨- الحياة البرية المحلية
٩- حفظ

3 Listen again and check (✓) the correct pictures. You can check more than one picture each time:

استمع مرة أخرى وضع علامة (✓) أمام الصور الصحيحة. يمكن وضع علامة (✓) أمام أكثر من صورة:

1. Eco-tourists like to travel by ...



2. Eco-tourists like to stay in ...



3. Eco-tourists like to ...



4 Listen and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

استمع وأكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمات التي بالأطار:



استمع إلى النص





Tapescript نص الاستماع

Narrator : 1

Sherif : Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people.

Narrator : 2

Sherif : Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution that planes cause.

Narrator : 3

Sherif : They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

Narrator : 4

Sherif : They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

Narrator : 5

Sherif : Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the coral reefs.

Narrator : 6

Sherif : Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive.

coral - dive - environment - hotels - wildlife - pollution

1. Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the ....environment..... and helps local people.
2. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the .... that planes cause.

3. They stay in small, local .... or pay to stay in people's houses.
4. They like to learn about local .... projects and local culture.
5. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the .... reefs.
6. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can ....

❶ 

A tourist diving in the Red Sea near a coral reef

❷ 

Siwa Oasis Tourism UNESCO Eco Village

5 Work with a partner. Discuss the questions: يقوم الطلاب في ثنائيات بمناقشة الأسئلة:

1. What do you think of eco-tourism?

----

2. What are the pros and cons of eco-tourism?

   Make a list in your notebook, and write five sentences. Discuss as a class.

Pros	Cons
It helps the environment.	It's not as comfortable as normal tourism.



CLIL: Math

Number sequences متتالية الأعداد

- متتالية الأعداد هي عبارة عن قائمة من الأرقام متصلة ببعضها طبقًا لقاعدة.
- عند فهمك للقاعدة، يمكنك أن تجد الرقم التالي في المتتالية.

Ex. 1 3 5 7 9 11 13 15 ____

- نلاحظ مما سبق أن الفارق بين كل عدد وآخر رقمين، ولذلك فإن القاعدة هي أن تضيف رقمين لكل عدد:

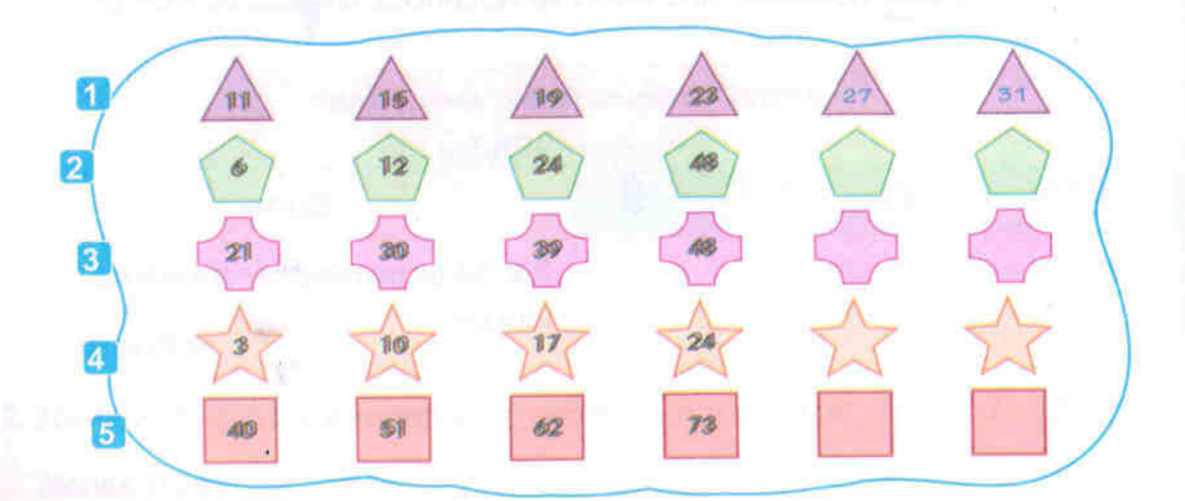
The next number in the sequence:

15 + 2 = 17

1 Write the numbers to complete the rules: اكتب العدد الذي سيضاف لتكمل المتتالية:

1. 5 10 15 20 25 30 — Rule: add ....5..........
2. 7 10 13 16 19 22 — Rule: add ....
3. 0 10 20 30 40 50 — Rule: add ....

2 Write the next two numbers in each sequence: اكتب العددين التاليين في كل متتالية:



ملحوظة

A number sequence can go up (= we add numbers +) or down (= we subtract numbers -):

- يمكن أن تكون متتالية الأعداد بالإضافة (+) أو بالطرح (-) كالآتي:

10 12 14 16 18 20 22 24 (add 2)	أضف(٢)
24 22 20 18 16 14 12 10 (subtract 2)	إطرح(٢)

3 Write the missing numbers in each sequence:

اكتب الأرقام الناقصة في كل متتالية:

1. 85 80 ....75.... 70 65 ....60....
2. 25 34 .... 52 61 ....
3. .... 20 40 80 320
4. 50 .... 42 38 30
5. 28 .... 48 58 78
6. 64 55 46 37 ....

4 Look and read. Write the next three numbers in the Fibonacci sequence:

انظر واقرأ. اكتب الثلاثة أعداد التالية في متتالية فيبوناتشي:



The Fibonacci sequence

Fibonacci was a famous Italian **mathematician**. He noticed a number sequence that was very useful for math and other sciences. Because he was the first to talk about this sequence, it took his name. It's called 'the Fibonacci sequence'.
In this sequence, you find the next number if you add the two previous

متتالية فيبوناتشي:

كان فيبوناتشي عالم إيطالي في الرياضيات. لاحظ متتالية أعداد مفيدة للرياضيات والعلوم، ولكونه أول من تحدث عن المتتالية فقد سميت باسمه. ويطلق عليها متتالية فيبوناتشي
وفي هذه المتتالية تحصل على العدد التالي إذا أضفت العددين السابقين معًا كما يلي:

0 1 1 2 3 5 8 13 ....

Answer: 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21......etc.

Activities



1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Eco-tourism looks after	a. stay in small local hotels.
2 Tourism damages historical	b. for local people.
3 Tourism gives jobs	c. places or monuments.
4 Eco-tourism is not as	d. comfortable as normal tourism.
5 Eco-tourists like to	e. the environment.

2 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eco-tourists like to travel .... bikes.
   a in b by c at
2. Tourists come to the Red Sea to ....
   a dive b drink c drive
3. Eco-tourists like to learn about .... projects and local culture.
   a energy b wildlife c sequence
4. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the .... that planes cause.
   a pollution b journey c pros
5. There are many coral .... in the Red sea.
   a loaves b leaves c reefs

3 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

environment - pros - comfortable

There are ❶ .... and cons of eco-tourism. Eco-tourism helps the ❷.................................. . But it's not as ❸.................................. as normal tourism.

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. how does eco-tourism help egypt

---

2. tourists come to the Red sea to dive

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson 4 ★ Pronunciation

- في هذا الدرس يقوم الطالب بالتعرف علي بعض الكلمات صعبة النطق لوجود ثلاثة حروف ساكنة متتالية بها وهذه نماذج منها :











ice skating	التزلج علي الجليد
chocolate	شيكولاتة
belt	حزام
sneakers	حذاء رياضي

1 Read and write. Then listen and repeat. اقرأ واكتب. ثم استمع وردد



The king sat on his ❶ ....throne.......... eating ❷ .... on a ❸ .... He was ❹ .... his ❺ .... He heard a ❻ .... A ❼ .... man came to help.

2 Look and check (✓) the correct words. Correct the spelling mistakes in the other words:

انظر وضع علامة (✓) أمام الكلمات الصحيحة. قم بتصحيح الأخطاء الإملائية في الكلمات الأخرى:

❶  ☐
milc
milk

❷  ☐
cake
....

❸  ☐
chokolate
....

❹  ☐
ise skating
....

❺  ☐
lakke
....

❻  ☐
beans
....

❼  ☐
belt
....

❽   ☐
mountaine
....

❾  ☐
sneekers
....

I help my community

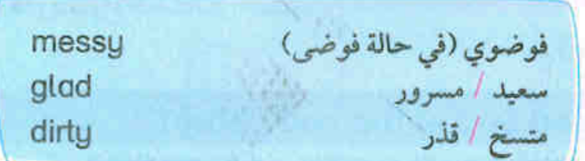


Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

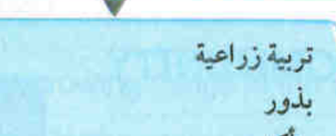
community	مجتمع صغير / جماعة
weeds	حشائش ضارة
surprise	مفاجأة
make friends	يكوّن صداقات
water (ed)	يروي بالماء

Adjectives صفات



messy	فوضوي (في حالة فوضى)
glad	سعيد / مسرور
dirty	متسخ / قذر
kind	عطوف
harmful	ضار
delicious	لذيذ الطعم/ شهي

Other words كلمات أخرى



soil	تربة زراعية
seeds	بذور
make sure	يتأكد
sunshine	أشعة الشمس
get bigger	يزداد حجمًا
healthy	صحيح (بصحة جيدة)

Definitions تعريفات

weeds حشائش ضارة — harmful plants

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
invite	يدعو (لمناسبة)	invited
work	يعمل	worked
plant	يزرع	planted
pick	يقطف/ يلتقط	picked
receive	يتسلم	received

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
feel	يشعر	felt
dig	يحفر	dug
take out	ينتزع	took out
teach	يعلم	taught

Study the following

1. The garden was dirty and messy. - كانت الحديقة متسخة وفي حالة فوضى.
2. They dug the soil. - قاموا بحفر التربة الزراعية.
3. They planted their vegetable and fruit seeds. - قاموا بزراعة بذور الخضر والفاكهة.
4. He made friends with the other people at the community garden. - كوّن صداقات مع الآخرين في الحديقة.
5. He watered the plants every day to keep them healthy. - قام بري النباتات كل يوم للحفاظ على صحتها.
6. He took out the weeds – the harmful plants. - قام بانتزاع الحشائش الضارة.

1 Listen and read. How does Maged feel at the end? Why?

استمع واقرأ. كيف يشعر ماجد في النهاية؟ لماذا؟



I HELP MY COMMUNITY

Maged and the community[1] garden

Maged's mom invited him to go to the community garden with her. At first, he didn't like it. It was dirty and messy[2], and he thought he didn't like plants. But Maged is a kind boy and he went to help his mom.

Together, they worked in their part of the garden.

They dug[3] the soil[4]. He and his mom planted their vegetable and fruit seeds.

He made friends[5] with the other people at the community garden. After working in the garden, Maged and his new friends sometimes went to play football in the park.

He remembered what he learned about looking after plants at school. He watered[6] the plants every day to keep them healthy. He took out the weeds[7] – the harmful plants. He made sure the plants got lots of sunshine[8] to help them grow.

He started to love the garden and was very happy to go there every day.

Arabic Meaning

١- مجتمع
٢- فوضوي (في حالة فوضى)
٣- حفروا
٤- تربة زراعية
٥- كوّن صداقات
٦- روى بالماء
٧- حشائش ضارة
٨- أشعة الشمس

It was so great to see the plants get bigger and bigger. Every day there was a surprise[9], with a new tomato or some new beans.

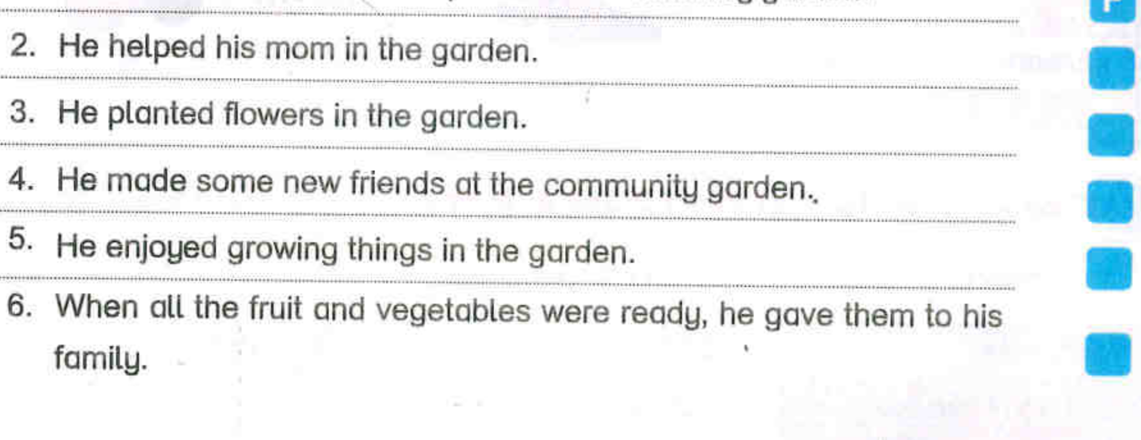
When all the fruit and vegetables were ready, the best thing was picking[10] everything. Maged and his mom took the beans, tomatoes, and strawberries to the people in the community – the older people and the people who were ill. They were so happy to receive all the delicious[11] food and Maged felt very glad[12].

Now Maged loves the garden and teaches others about growing plants.

٩- مفاجأة
١٠- قطف
١١- لذيذ الطعم
١٢- مسرور

2 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ مرة أخرى واجب (صح) أم (خطأ):



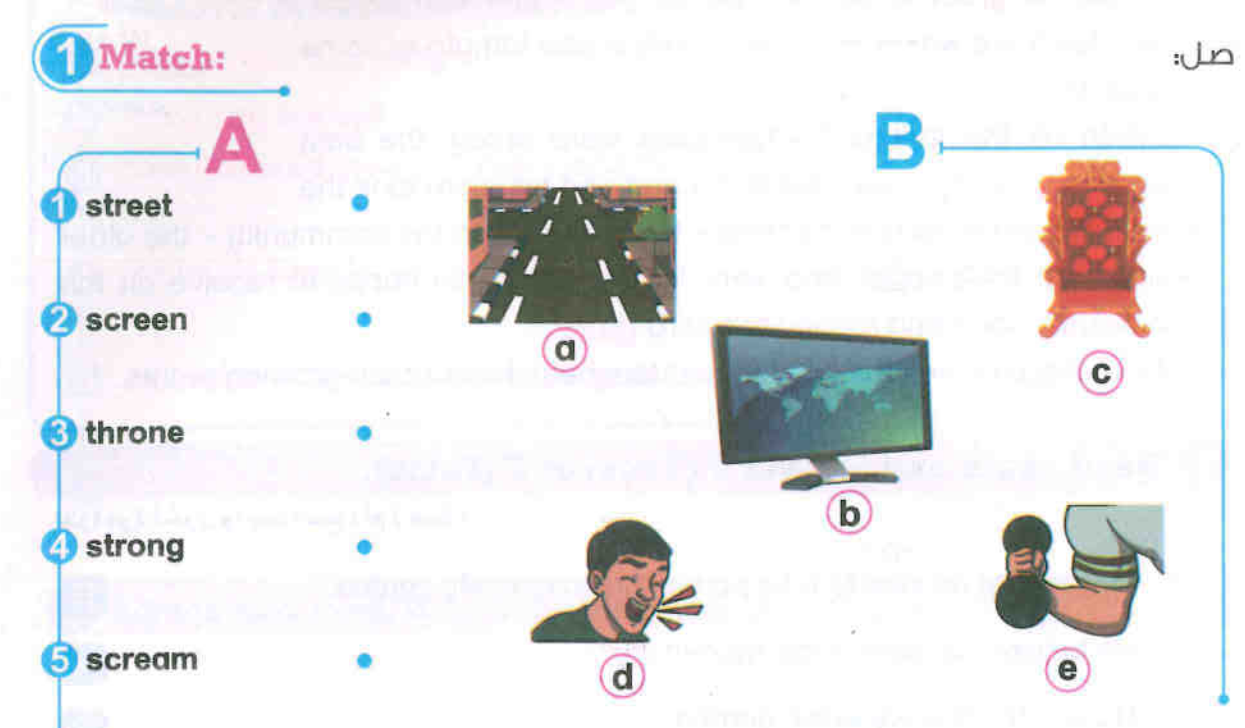
1. Maged had an idea to take part in the community garden. F
2. He helped his mom in the garden.
3. He planted flowers in the garden.
4. He made some new friends at the community garden.
5. He enjoyed growing things in the garden.
6. When all the fruit and vegetables were ready, he gave them to his family.





Activities

1 Match: صل:



2 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers .... their plants every day.
   a water b drink c burn
2. I don't like this garden, it's dirty and ....
   a delicious b messy c glad
3. We need to take out the .... to keep the plants healthy.
   a weeks b soil c weeds
4. I like to .... friends on Facebook.
   a do b make c give
5. It was a .... to get nice presents on my birthday.
   a surprise b community c healthy
6. Take out these plants, they are ....
   a kind b glad c harmful

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. out - weeds - Maged - took - the.

----

2. seeds - planted - fruit - They - vegetable - and.

----

3. plants - keep - He - to - watered - the - healthy - them.

----

4. friends - other - He - people - made - with - the.

----

4 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب اخر الوحدة

Your community garden

community - like - messy - soil - glad

----

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. does mustafa make a lot of friends

----

2. it s dirty and messy

LESSONS 5&6 Taba: My favorite eco-resort



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

eco-resort	منتجع بيئي	wildlife	حياة برية
eco-lodges	نزل بيئية/ أماكن سكن صديقة للبيئة		



Holiday Activities أنشطة للإجازات

hiking	السير لمسافات طويلة	diving	الغطس
camping	إقامة المعسكرات (التخييم)		

Adjectives صفات

excellent	ممتاز	friendly	ودود
fascinating	مبهر/ خلاب	eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
fantastic	رائع	cool	لطيف
perfect	تام/ كامل	main	أساسي/ رئيسي
round	مستدير	rare	نادر



Other words كلمات أخرى

valley	وادي	culture	ثقافة
Nubian ibex	حيوان الوعل النوبي	structure	بناء
camp	مخيم / معسكر	building	مبنى
Sinai	سيناء	hut	كوخ
eco-destination	مقصد بيئي / وجْهَة بيئية	way of life	أسلوب الحياة
example	نموذج		

Study the following

1. Taba is an excellent example where eco-tourism works well.
   - تُعد طابا نموذجًا ممتازًا حيث السياحة البيئية تعمل جيدًا.
2. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba.
   - يمكنك أن تجد حياة برية رائعة في طابا.
3. The buildings are fascinating.
   - المباني مبهرة.
4. Eco-tourists can stay in camps and eco-lodges.
   - يمكن للسياح البيئيين الإقامة في المخيمات والنزل البيئية.
5. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea in Taba.
   - يمكنك أن تجد وديان وجبال وصحراء وبحر في طابا.
6. The local people are friendly.
   - السكان المحليون ودودون.
7. If you like history, there is lots in Taba.
   - إذا كنت تحب التاريخ فيوجد في طابا الكثير من الأشياء المتعلقة.
8. You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!
   - يمكن أن تجد كل ما يتعلق بإجازة رائعة في طابا.
9. Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt.
   - تعال وشاهد الحياة البرية الأكثر روعة في مصر.
10. We have wonderful to fish, birds, and animals.
   - لدينا أسماك وطيور وحيوانات رائعة.

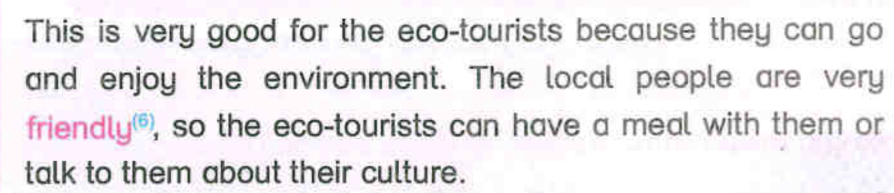
1 Look and read. Why is Taba good for eco-tourism?

انظر واقرأ. لماذا تعد طابا مدينة جيدة للسياحة البيئية؟



استمع إلى النص

Eco-tourism in Egypt



Camp in Sinai, Egypt

Taba is an excellent[1] example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well.

You can find valleys[2], mountains, desert[3], and the sea there.

You can find fantastic wildlife[4] in Taba, like the Nubian ibex[5] and rare birds.

This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment. The local people are very friendly[6], so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture.

If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis[7], a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating[8]!



Nawamis Structure- Sinai, Egypt

Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking[9], and camping[10]. They can stay in camps[11] and eco-lodges[12].

You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

Arabic Meaning
١- ممتاز
٢- وديان
٣- صحراء
٤- حياة برية
٥- حيوان الوعل النوبي
٦- ودوديين
٧- نواميس (قرية بدوية بجنوب سيناء)
٨- مبهر/خلاب
٩- السير لمسافات طويلة
١٠- إقامة المعسكرات/ التخييم
١١- معسكرات
١٢- نزل بيئي

2 Look at the flyer advertising the eco-holiday in Taba. Answer the questions:

انظر إلى النشرة الإعلانية عن إجازة بيئية فى طابا وأجب عن الأسئلة :

1. Where is the main heading? How do you know? ما العنوان الرئيسي؟ كيف تعرف؟

- -

2. How many sub-headings are there? What are they? كم عدد العناوين الفرعية؟ ما هي؟

- -

3. Would you like to stay there? Why / Why not? هل تود الإقامة؟ لم / لم لا؟

- -

Perfect[1] eco-tourism in Egypt



Meet the local people
Talk to them about their way of life [2].



Enjoy the local culture[3]
Visit Nawamis, a 6,000-year-old village.



Take part in exciting activities
You can hike[4], swim, and dive.



Stay in our comfortable huts
They are cool and eco-friendly[5].



Enjoy the wildlife
Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt! We have wonderful fish, birds, and animals.

Arabic Meaning
١- رائع
٢- أسلوب حياة
٣- ثقافة
٤- يسير لمسافات طويلة
٥- صديق للبيئة



Activities

1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. In Taba, you can stay in ....
   a tourists   b eco-lodges   c tourism
2. The buildings in Taba are ....
   a fascinating   b friendly   c kind
3. Taba is a/an .... eco-resort.
   a round   b harmful   c excellent
4. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, ... and camping.
   a hiking   b building   c writing
5. Hurghada is a/an ....
   a tourism   b eco-resort   c tourist

2 Circle the odd one out: ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1	excellent	fantastic	wildlife	fascinating
2	diving	being	hiking	camping
3	friendly	cool	perfect	structure
4	Cairo	Sinai	Aswan	Valley

3 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. an - Taba - excellent - is - eco-resort.
   ----
2. can - wildlife - find - fantastic - Taba - in - You.
   ----
3. camps - stay - can - Eco-tourists - in.
   ----
4. are - The - fascinating - buildings.



Review

Key vocabulary


mountain جبل


lake بحيرة


waterfall شلال


island جزيرة


forest غابة


coral reefs شعاب مرجانية


Aswan Botanical Garden حديقة النباتات بأسوان


Temple of Philae معبد فيلة

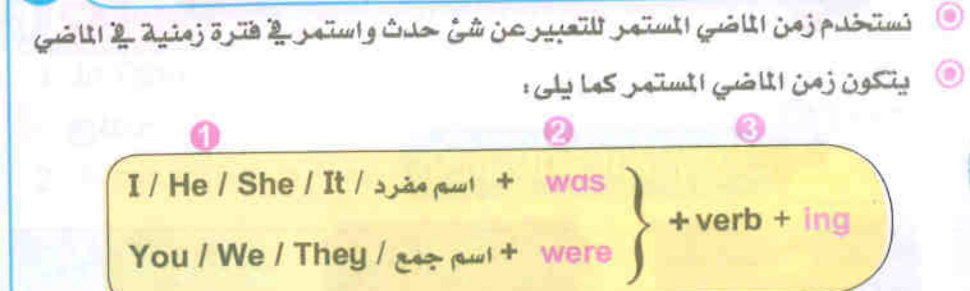
English	Arabic	English	Arabic
lots	الكثير	rare	نادر
sunset	غروب الشمس	reign	فترة حُكم
climate change	تغير المناخ	normal	طبيعي / عادي
greenhouse effect	الاحتباس الحراري	livestock farming	تربية الماشية
greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحراري	blanket	غطاء (بطانية)
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي	cause	سبب
suitable	مناسب	result	نتيجة
greenhouse	صوبة زراعية	pollution	التلوث
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	mathematician	عالِم في الرياضيات
eco-tourist	سائح بيئي	dive (d)	يغطس
eco-resort	منتجع بيئي	wildlife	حياة برية
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	hotel	فندق
environment	البيئة		

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 Past continuous زمن الماضي المستمر

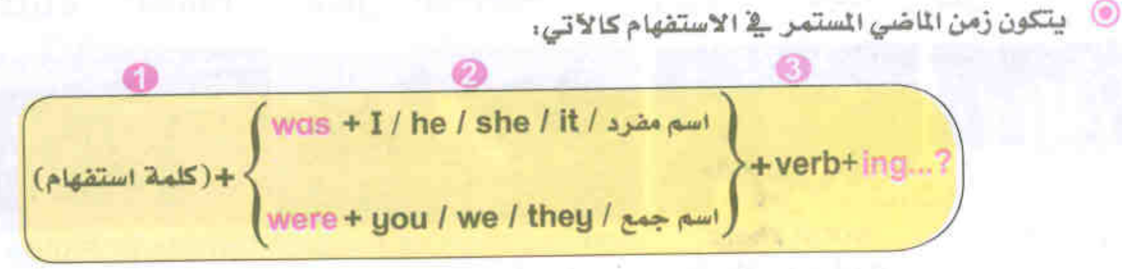
◉ نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن شئ حدث واستمر في فترة زمنية في الماضي

◉ يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر كما يلي:



- The atmosphere was changing a little.

◉ يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر في الاستفهام كالآتي:

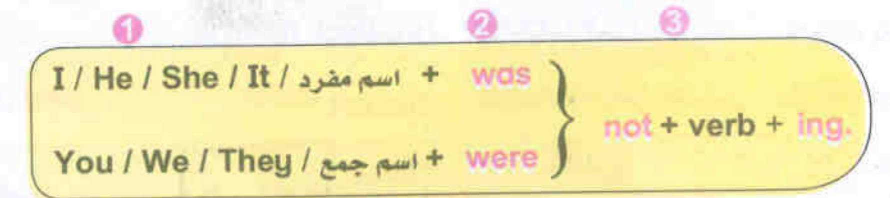


A : What were you having?

B : I was having lunch.

- Were you watching TV? - Yes, I was. - No, I wasn't.

◉ لنفى الفعل فى زمن الماضي المستمر نضع (not) بين (was / were) والفعل:



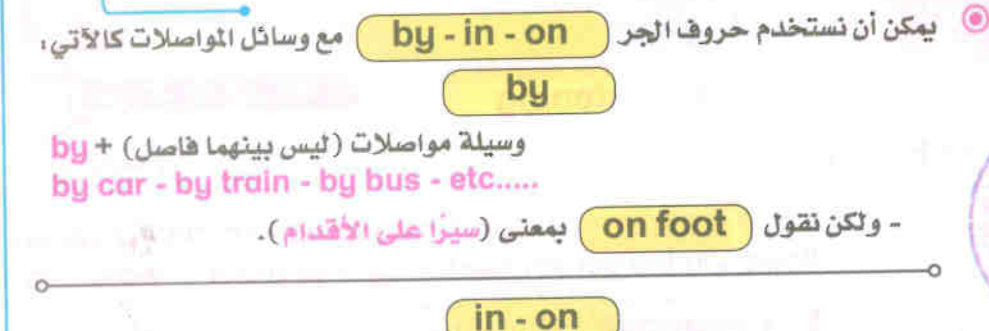
- We were not having a good time.

was not = wasn't were not = weren't

Keywords

while / as	بينما / أثناء	/ when	عندما
while / as ⟶	ماضي مستمر	⟶	ماضي بسيط
when ⟶	ماضي بسيط	⟶	ماضي مستمر

2 by - in - on مع وسائل المواصلات



in - on

in + (a / an / the / my..... وبينهما فاصل) وسيلة مواصلات لا يمكن المشي داخلها

- in a / my car - in a / the taxi.

on + (بينهما فاصل) وسائل مواصلات يمكن المشي داخلها

- on the bus - on the train -

- لاحظ: on my bike / horse

Pronunciation







A- Listening

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose: استمع واختر:

1. Hani was .... at 6 am. (sleeping - eating - playing)
2. Rasha .... flowers in the garden. (watering - planted - watching)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words below: أقرأ وأكمل:

helps - worried - pros

A : What are the ________________ of eco-tourism?
B : It ________________ the environment.
A : What's the problem?
B : I'm feeling ________________.

C- Reading

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: أقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I went to Taba with my father and my mother. Taba is a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Yesterday, I went to .... (Cairo - Taba - Alexandria)
2. I went to Taba with my father and .... (sister - brother - mother)
3. Taba is a part of .... (England - Egypt - Libya)

D- The Reader

4 Read and write (True) or (False): اقرأ وأكتب صح أم خطأ:

		True	False
1	Amir sends a letter to the reptile club.		
2	Hany is a geologist.		

E- Usage

5 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. The fox .... sleeping.
   a were b are c was
2. Animals may lose their food because .... die.
   a plants b rivers c lakes



مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

Lesson 1

My city (Aswan)



1. My city is a fantastic city. There's lots to see. It has museums and temples. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet. I love it very much.

Lesson 4

My community garden



2. Yesterday, I went to the community garden. I didn't like it at first. It was dirty and messy. I dug the soil and planted flowers. I became glad when the flowers got bigger..

Activity Unit 4

My favorite eco-resort (Taba)



3. Taba is my favorite eco-resort. I can find valleys, mountains, desert and the sea there. I can find fantastic wildlife. I can enjoy the environment. The local people are friendly.

ON UNIT 4 **Activity**



1 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Omar was .... his homework at 6 pm yesterday.
   a make b making c made
2. .... helps people learn about new culture.
   a Pollution b Farming c Tourism
3. .... change is a big problem on Earth.
   a Climate b Livestock c Coral
4. Adel made many friends at the .... garden.
   a tourist b community c camping

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Eco-tourism	a. camping in the desert.
2 We travelled to the island	b. in the Red Sea.
3 Tourists dive	c. looks after the environment.
4 I was	d. and messy.
5 The community garden was dirty	e. by boat.

3 Fill in the gaps using the words in the box:

املأ الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

history - Island - lots

The Elephantine ❶ .... is a fantastic place. It is full of ❷ .... You can travel to it by boat. There's ❸ .... to see.

4 Read the following and the questions: اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The climate in an area usually takes a long time to change. Climate takes hundreds, thousands, or millions of years to change. The greenhouse gases include carbon dioxide and methane. These gases are like a blanket for the Earth, helping to keep the Earth warm enough. An increase in the greenhouse gases causes the Earth to become warmer. A warmer climate can affect the Earth badly.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

1. Greenhouse gases are like a .... for the Earth.
   a blanket b sheet c carpet
2. The greenhouse gases causes the Earth to become ....
   a colder b better c warmer

B- Answer the following questions:

1. How long does it take the climate to change? ------------------------
2. What are greenhouse gases? ------------------------

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. are - people - The - friendly - local
   ----
2. up - Earth's - goes - temperature - The.
   ----
3. for - Tourism - jobs - people - gives - local.
   ----
4. reefs - You - see - coral - can - Red Sea - the - in.
   ----

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب اخر الوحدة

Your favorite eco-resort (Taba)

favorite - valleys - wildlife - environment - friendly

----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. it s not as comfortable as normal
   ----
2. how is tourism important to egypt





Myself and others



Jobs we do

الوظائف التى نعمل بها







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different types of jobs in Ancient Egypt.
   - يستمع الطالب و يقرأ و يقوم بعمل بحث و يكتب عن أنواع الوظائف المختلفة فى مصر القديمة.
2. Understand ecosystems.
   - يفهم الطالب عن النظم البيئية.
3. Learn about jobs in tourism.
   - يتعلم الطالب عن الوظائف المتعلقة بالسياحة.
4. Practice using the present simple to talk about routines.
   - يتدرب الطالب على استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن الروتين (العادات و الممارسات المعتادة).
5. Practice using *must* to talk about obligation.
   - يتدرب الطالب على استخدام (must) (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الالزام.
6. Understand and discuss a traditional tale.
   - يفهم الطالب و يناقش إحدى القصص القديمة.
7. Learn to say words with diphthongs.
   - يتعلم الطالب كيف يقول الكلمات التى بها ادغام (دمج نطق حرفين متحركين متلاصقين)
8. Understand pie charts.
   - يفهم الطالب الرسوم البيانية الدائرية.
9. Write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
   - يكتب الطالب عن مميزات و عيوب الوظائف المختلفة.
10. Make a poster about teamwork.
    - يقوم الطالب بعمل ملصق يعبر عن العمل الجماعى.

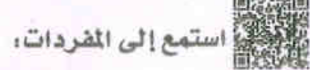






Jobs in Ancient Egypt









sculptures تماثيل



grains حبوب

hieroglyphs اللغة الهيروغليفية



scribe كاتب (عند الفراعنه)



jewelry مصوغات



records سجلات



farmers فلاحين

paintings لوحات



craftsmen حرفيين



flax بذور الكتان

skillful	ماهر	pharaohs	الفراعنة
female ruler	الملكة الحاكمة	medicine	دواء
economy	اقتصاد	income	دَخْل / إيراد

Important jobs وظائف هامة

doctor	طبيب	farmer	فلاح
fisherman	صياد	trader	تاجر
baker	خباز	craftspeople	حرفيين

Other words كلمات أخرى



signs	علامات / رموز	wheat	قمح
crops	محاصيل	Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة
sandals	صندل	basket	سلة
rows	صفوف	queen	ملكة
columns	اعمدة	temple	معبد

Unit 5 Jobs we do



Adjectives صفات

important	هام
successful	ناجح
colorful	كثير الألوان
expensive	غالي الثمن
ancient	قديم
medical	طبي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
plant	يزرع	planted
respect	يحترم	respected
cook	يطهي	cooked
bake	يخبز	baked
consist of	يتكون من	consisted of

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
become	يصبح	became
grow	ينمو / يزرع	grew
weave	ينسج	wove
spend	يقضي (وقت)	spent

Study the following

1. People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. كان يعمل الناس فى مصر القديمة بجد .
2. People could work as fishermen. استطاع الناس أن يعملوا كصيادين.
3. Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt. كان الفلاحين ذو أهمية كبرى فى مصر القديمة.
4. Farming brings a lot of income to Egypt. تجلب الزراعة كثيراً من الدخل لمصر .
5. Craftsmen made beautiful things. صنع الحرفيون أشياء جميلة .
6. Craftsmen wove beautiful clothes. قام الحرفيون بنسج ملابس جميلة .
7. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs. قضى الكتبة سنوات عديدة فى تعلم الهيروغليفية.
8. The Ancient Egyptians were very successful! كان القدماء المصريون ناجحون جدًا.
9. Hatshepsut was a famous female ruler of Egypt. كانت الملكة حتشبسوت حاكمة مشهورة لمصر.

1 Listen and read. Why couldn't many people work as scribes?:

استمع واقرأ لماذا لم يتمكن العديد من الناس العمل ككتبة :

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

استمع إلى النص:



Temple of Hatshepsut, female ruler of Egypt, c. 1473-1458 BCE

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard.
Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen[1], bakers, doctors, and traders.
But most people worked as farmers.
Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt's economy[2]. They worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops[3], usually grains[4] like wheat, corn, and flax[5]. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.
Ancient Egyptian craftsmen[6] were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures[7]. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. The craftspeople were skillful and everybody in the community respected them. Fewer people worked as scribes[8].
Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave[9] baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs[10]. One famous queen[11] in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

Arabic Meaning

1- صيادون
2- اقتصاد
3- محاصيل
4- حبوب
5- بذور الكتان
6- حرفيين
7- تماثيل
8- كتبة
9- ينسج
10- فراعين (ملوك)
11- ملكة

2 Listen again and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع مرة أخرى واكتب (صح) أم (خطأ)

		True	False
1	Everyone in Ancient Egypt could become a scribe.		F
2	Craftspeople were respected in Ancient Egypt.		
3	Women worked at home only.		
4	Farmers could plant fruit, vegetables, and grains.		
5	There were very few jobs in Ancient Egypt.		

3 Listen and repeat. Then match the words to their descriptions:

استمع وردد ثم صل الكلمة بتعريفها:

doctor - craftsman - trader - scribe - hieroglyphs

1- ......scribe...... People with this job were very important in Ancient Egypt. They could write everything down. They kept records and lists for important things.

2- .... People who did this job traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains.

3- .... If you were good at making things, this was a good job for you. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold.

4- .... A system of writing which consisted of about 500 signs, written in rows and columns. People used it in Ancient Egypt.

5- .... Both men and women could do this job, too. You had to go to medical school to have this job. You had to look after people who were ill and make medicine.

4 Look at these jobs. Choose one and write 2-3 descriptions, like the ones in Exercise 3

انظر إلى هذه الوظائف. اختر واحدة واكتب (٢ - ٣) جمل وصفية مثل التمرين رقم (٣):

fisherman - farmer - teacher

Farmers : People with this job were very important. They worked hard in the fields and planted many crops.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

More than 25% of people in Egypt work in farming. Farming brings a lot of income to Egypt

أكثر من ٢٥٪ من المصريين يعملون فى الزراعة ، فالزراعة تجلب دخلاً كبيراً لمصر.



Activities

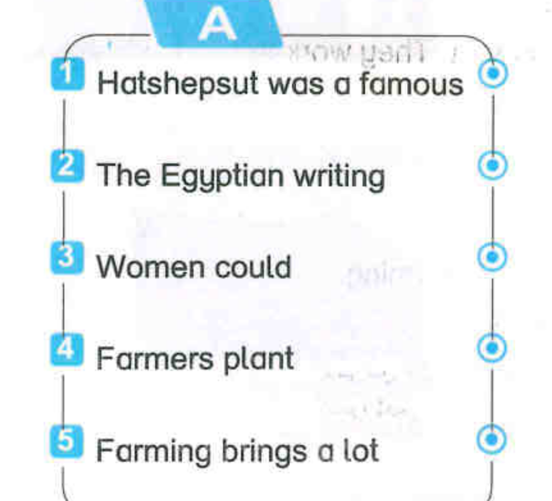
1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

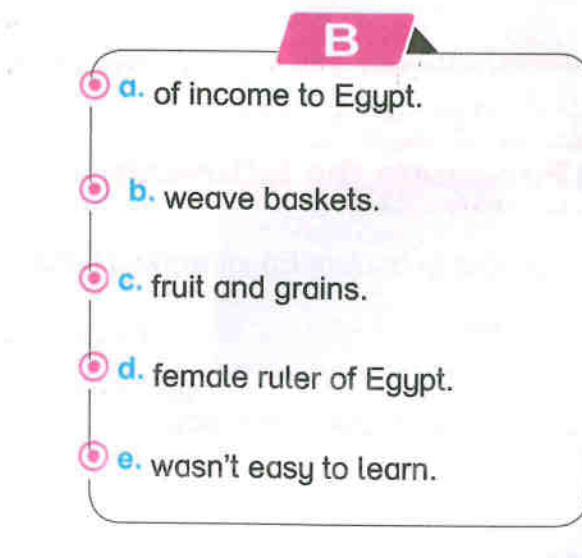
اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt's ....
   a scribes b baskets c economy
2. Craftsmen .... beautiful paintings and jewelry.
   a plant b make c cook
3. .... had to go to medical schools.
   a Doctors b Scribes c Craftsmen
4. They planted crops, usually .... like wheat, corn and flax.
   a craftsmen b grains c records
5. The craftsmen were very .... and people respected them.
   a expensive b ancient c skillful
6. .... was a system of writing. People used it in Ancient Egypt.
   a Hieroglyphs b Medicine c Pots

2 Read and match:

أقرأ وصل:





Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

3 Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

scribes - grains - skillful

Farmers were very important in Ancient Egypt. They planted many ❶ .... Craftsmen were very ❷ .... and everybody respected them. Fewer people worked as ❸ .... in Ancient Egypt.

4 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



Jobs in Ancient Egypt

farmers - grains - fields - scribes - learn



- -
- -
- -
- -
- -

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

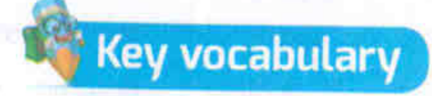
1. people in ancient Egypt worked hard

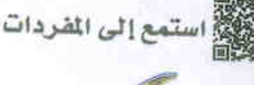
- -

2. why does mustafa like clay

- -

Lesson 2 ★ Ecosystems Part 1



استمع إلى المفردات:



crab
كابوريا


rocks
صخور


sunlight
ضوء الشمس

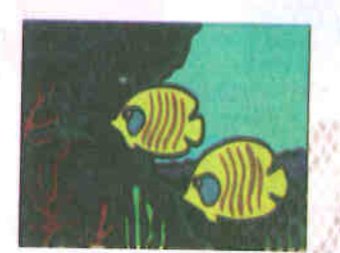

fish
سمك


insect
حشرة


sand
رمل


seaweed
طحالب/أعشاب بحرية


rainforest
غابة مطيرة


Marine ecosystem
النظام البيئى البحرى



Freshwater ecosystem
النظام البيئى للمياه العذبة


Desert ecosystem
النظام البيئى الصحراوى


Rockpool ecosystem
النظام البيئى للبحيرات الصخرية

rockpool	بحيرة صخرية
living	حي

suitable	مناسب
non-living	غير حي

Other words كلمات أخرى

freshwater	ماء عذب	climate	مناخ
saltwater	ماء مالح	connection	صلة / علاقة
conditions	ظروف	dolphin	دولفين
temperature	درجة حرارة	source	مصدر

Adjectives صفات



natural	طبيعي	different	مختلف
connected	متصل		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
connect	يتصل	connected
survive	يبقى حيًا	survived
work	يعمل	worked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
make	يصنع	made
give	يعطي	gave

Definitions تعريفات

living	حي	something that is alive
non-living	غير حي	something that isn't alive
ecosystem	نظام بيئي	all the animals, plants, rocks, etc.. in a place
rockpool	بحيرة صخرية	a small area of water with rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.

Study the following

1. The Nile River is the most important source of freshwater in Egypt.
   نهر النيل هو المصدر الأكثر أهمية للماء العذب في مصر.
2. Everything in the natural world is connected.
   كل شيء في العالم الطبيعي مرتبط ببعضه البعض.
3. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed.
   الكائنات الحية في البحيرات الصخرية هي الأسماك والكابوريا والأعشاب البحرية.
4. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.
   يوجد العديد من أنواع النظم البيئية على كوكب الارض.
5. Plants need sunlight and water to survive.
   تحتاج النباتات إلى ضوء الشمس والماء لتبقى على قيد الحياة.
6. Animals and plants need each other to live.
   تحتاج الحيوانات والنباتات بعضها البعض للبقاء على قيد الحياة.
7. Trees give us oxygen.
   تعطينا الأشجار الأكسجين.
8. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand and sunlight.
   الكائنات غير الحية هي الصخور والمياه والرمال وضوء الشمس.
9. Climate is an important part of an ecosystem.
   يعتبر المناخ عنصرا هاما في النظام البيئي.
10. Trees make the air cleaner.
   تجعل الأشجار الهواء أكثر نقاءاً.

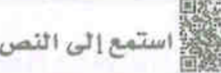
1 Think and say: فكر وقل :

Think about the Nile River. It is the most important source of fresh water in Egypt. A lot of plants and animals live near or in the river. Name as many plants and animals that live in or near the river as you can.

----

2 Listen, read, and look. Are all ecosystems the same?

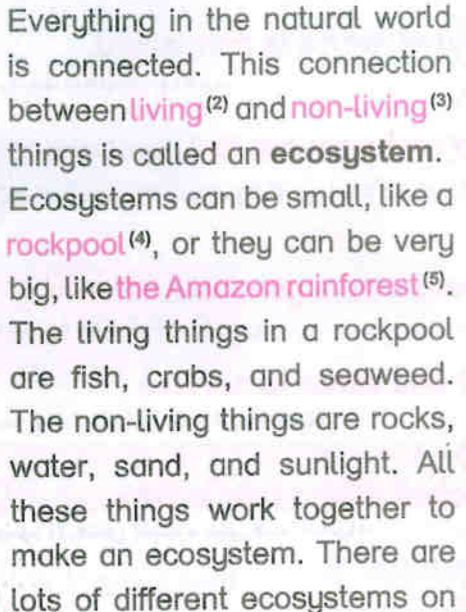
أستمع واقرأ وانظر. هل كل النظم البيئية نفس الشيء؟



استمع إلى النص:



a marine ecosystem



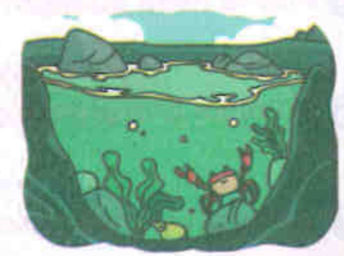
a desert ecosystem

What is an ecosystem[1]?

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living[2] and non-living[3] things is called an **ecosystem**. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool[4], or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest[5]. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight. All these things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.



a freshwater ecosystem



a rockpool ecosystem

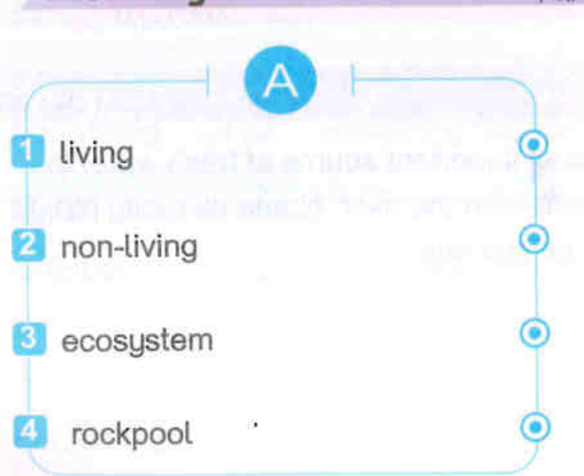


Arabic Meaning

١- نظام بيئي
٢- حي
٣- غير حي
٤- بحيرة صخرية
٥- غابات الامازون الاستوائية

3 Look at the words in bold in the text. Match them to their meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات المكتوبة بالخط العريض وصلهم بمعانيهم:



A

1. living
2. non-living
3. ecosystem
4. rockpool

B

a. something that isn't alive
b. all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place
c. a small area of water with rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.
d. something that is alive

4 Look and write:

أنظر واكتب:

crab - fish - insect - rocks - sand - seaweed - sunlight - tree - water



1. rocks
2. ______
3. ______
4. ______
5. ______
6. ______
7. ______
8. ______
9. ______

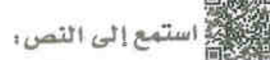
5 Are the things in Exercise 4 living or non-living? Write the words in the correct group:

هل الأشياء في التمرين رقم (٤) كائنات حية أم غير حية؟ أكتب الكلمات في التصنيف الصحيح:

Living things كائنات حية	Non-Living things كائنات غير حية
fish	rocks
______	______
______	______
______	______

6 Listen and read. What do animals and plants need to survive?

استمع وأقرأ. ماذا تحتاج الحيوانات والنباتات حتى تظل على قيد الحياة؟





Why are ecosystems important?

Everything in the natural[1] world is connected. An ecosystem is a place where animals, plants, and other living things live together. Animals and plants need each other to live. They also need suitable[2] conditions[3].

Animals eat plants, insects, and other animals to survive[4]. They need food, water, and shelter. And they need the weather to be at the right temperature.

Plants need sunlight and water to survive. Some plants need animals, birds, and insects to carry seeds[5] to other areas so they can grow. They also need the right climate.

Climate is also an important part of an ecosystem. Trees give us oxygen. This makes the air cleaner and allows plants, animals, and humans to live in a comfortable environment.

Arabic Meaning

١- طبيعي
٢- مناسب
٣- ظروف
٤- تبقى على قيد الحياة
٥- بذور

7 Look at the photos of two ecosystems. Then complete the diagram with the words in the box:

أنظر إلى صور كل من النظامين البيئيين، ثم أكمل الشكل بالكلمات التالية:

dolphins - fish - insects - monkeys - rocks - sunlight - water

Rainforest	Both	sea
monkeys	water	dolphin
....		....
....		....





Activities

1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... is the connection between living and non-living things.
   a. Rockpool b. Ecosystem c. Desert
2. Everything in the natural world is ....
   a. connected b. given c. worked
3. Plants need .... conditions to keep the air clean.
   a. suitable b. hard c. wrong
4. Animals and plants need each other to ....
   a. love b. live c. carry
5. .... is a small area of water with rocks, crabs and seaweed.
   a. Desert b. Ecosystem c. Rockpool

2 Read and match:

أقر وصل:

A	B
1 Trees give us	a. different ecosystems on Earth.
2 The non-living things	b. are rocks, water and sand.
3 Climate is	c. part of an ecosystem.
4 There are lots of	d. need each other to live.
5 Animals and plants	e. oxygen.

3 Read and fill in the gaps:

اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

suitable - survive - temperature

Animals and plants are important for any ecosystem. They need ❶ .... conditions to be safe. The world ❷ .... is sometimes bad for them. They need our help to ❸ ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. are - ecosystems - Why - important?
----
2. live - can - Some plants - desert - the - in.
----
3. animals - need - What - to - do - survive?
----
4. sunlight - Plants - to - need - survive.
----
5. What - is - ecosystem - an?
----

5 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



Rockpool ecosystem

rocks - living - crabs - fish - seaweed





----

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1- dolphins don t live in the desert

2- what s an ecosystem



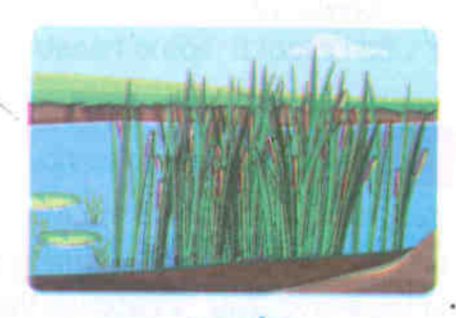
Lesson 2 ★ Ecosystems Part 2




استمع إلى المفردات:


coast
ساحل


jackal
حيوان ابن آوى


reeds
نبات البوص

Other words كلمات أخرى



endangered	معرض لخطر الإنقراض
turtle	سلحفاة
hippo	فرس النهر
mangrove trees	أشجار المانجروف
species	انواع / فصائل
bamboo	نبات الخيزران
corals	شعاب مرجانية

gazelles	غزلان
foxes	الثعالب
tamarisk	الطرفاء (شجرة نحيلة الأغصان)
bank	ضفة نهر
ibex	حيوان الوعل (ماعز الجبل البري)
habitat	بيئة الحيوان أو النبات
acacia	نبات السنط (شجرة الصمغ)



Adjectives صفات

extinct	منقرض
marine	بحري

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
include	يشتمل على	included
border	يجاور / يُحد	bordered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
mean	يقصد	meant

Definitions تعريفات

endangered معرض لخطر الإنقراض: means that there are not many of a plant or animal left in the world. This is because their habitat has been lost or because too many of them have been killed.

Study the following

1. The banks of the Nile River have many different species of animals.
يوجد بضفاف نهر النيل أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات.
2. There are more than 800 types of seaweed.
يوجد أكثر من ٨٠٠ نوع من أعشاب البحر.
3. About 90% of Egypt's land is desert area.
حوالي ٩٠ ٪ من مساحة مصر منطقة صحراوية.
4. There are different animals in Egypt's desert.
توجد حيوانات مختلفة في صحراء مصر.
5. Many water birds live in the reeds on the river bank.
يعيش العديد من الطيور في نبات البوص الموجود على ضفة النهر.



1 Read and write :
أقرأ وأكتب:

desert - marine - freshwater

استمع إلى النص:

1 Egypt's marine **ecosystem**

Egypt's coast includes the Mediterranean Sea [1] and the Red Sea. In both of these seas, there are many different plants and animals. Some of them, like turtles, birds, and mangrove trees[2], are endangered[3]. There are more than 800 types of seaweed and more than 200 types of coral[4].

2 Egypt's .... **ecosystem**

About 90% of Egypt's land is desert areas. It looks like nothing can live in these areas, but there are many different animals in Egypt's deserts, such as camels, gazelles[5], jackals, ibex[6], and foxes. There are also some plants, such as tamarisk[7] and acacia[8].

Arabic Meaning
١- البحر الابيض المتوسط
٢- أشجار المانجروف
٣- معرض لخطر الإنقراض
٤- شعاب مرجانية
٥- غزلان
٦- حيوان الوعل (ماعز الجبل البري)
٧- الطرفاء (شجرة نحيلة الاغصان)
٨- نبات السنط (شجرة الصمغ)

3 Egypt's .... **ecosystem**

The banks of the Nile River have many different species of animals and plants, like hippos and bamboo. There is lots of fresh water, not saltwater like the sea. Many water birds live in the reeds on the river bank. It's a good place for them because there are plenty of fish to eat.

2 Read again and circle the correct words :
أقرأ مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة:

1. Egypt borders (two) / three seas.
2. Turtles are an **extinct / endangered** species.
3. Ibex and foxes **live / don't live** in the desert.
4. **Some / No** plants can live in the desert.
5. The water in the Nile is **freshwater / saltwater**.
6. The river bank **is / isn't** a good place for birds.

Activities



1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Egypt's .... includes the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea.
   a coast   b bamboo   c tamarisk
2. .... are endangered animals.
   a Banks   b Jackals   c Reeds
3. .... means not many plants or animals are left.
   a Different   b Marine   c Endangered
4. Many water birds live in the .... on the river bank.
   a reeds   b coasts   c tamarisk

2 Read and match: أقر وصل:

A	B
1 About 90% of Egypt's	a. species of animals.
2 Egypt borders many different species of animals.	b. two seas.
3 There are plenty	c. of fish to eat.
4 The water in the Nile	d. land is desert area.
5 The Nile River has	e. is freshwater.

3 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

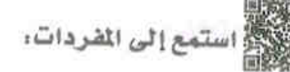
1. live - the - Turtles - in - sea.
----
2. eat - from - river - Water birds - fish - the.
----
3. desert - Foxes - in - live - the.
----
4. are - There - in - different - Egypt's - animals - desert.
----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. many animals live in the Nile river
----
2. fish and hippo.don t live in the desert

Lesson 3 ★ Tourism helps our community




استمع إلى المفردات:

Historical Places
أماكن تاريخية


Nubia
النوبة


Karnak Temple
معبد الكرنك


Temple of Philae
معبد فيلة


Abu Simbel
معبد أبو سمبل

Aswan Botanical Garden
حديقة النباتات بأسوان


The Great Temple of Ramses II
معبد رمسيس الثاني الكبير


Elephantine Island
جزيرة إلفنتين



Other words كلمات أخرى

airport	مطار	souvenir	هدية تذكارية
monuments	آثار	temple	معبد
welcoming	مُرَحِب	site	موقع

geography	جغرافيا
journey	رحلة طويلة
boss	رئيس عمال
sunset	غروب الشمس
midday	وسط النهار
melon	شمام

Jobs وظائف

tour guide	مرشد سياحي
hotel manager	مدير فندق
waiter	جرسون (نادل)
chef	طاه / طباخ
boat captain	قائد قارب
zoo keeper	حارس حديقة الحيوان
taxi driver	سائق تاكسي
shop owner	صاحب محل
architect	مهندس معماري
archaeologist	عالم آثار
market trader	تاجر في السوق

Adjectives صفات



friendly	ودود
amazing	مذهل / مدهش
sharp	حاد
enormous	ضخم / هائل
fun	مَرِح
historical	تاريخي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
move	يتحرك / يحرك	moved
prepare	يجهز	prepared
check	يفحص / يتأكد	checked
study	يدرس	studied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
know	يعرف	knew
show	يوضح / يعرض	showed
fly	يطير	flew
catch	يمسك / يلحق بـ	caught
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
forget	ينسى	forgot

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

Form التكوين

- يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من مصدر الفعل مع الآتي:

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع → (inf.) فعل في المصدر

- I eat fruit every day.

- ويضاف للفعل (ies / es / s) مع الضمائر (He / She / It).

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → (inf.) فعل في المصدر + {s, es, ies}

- He eats fruit. - She catches a bus. - He flies a plane

في حالة النفي

- نستخدم: I / We / You / They / اسم الجمع + don't + inf.

- They don't like fish.

- نستخدم: He / She / It / اسم المفرد + doesn't + inf...?

- She doesn't play tennis.

في حالة الإستفهام

- نستخدم: (كلمة استفهام) Do + I / we / you / they / اسم جمع + inf...?

- Do you watch TV?

- نستخدم: (كلمة استفهام) Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + inf...?

- Where does he live?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

- تأتي الكلمات التالية مع زمن المضارع البسيط.

sometimes | often | usually | always | every day / week...

- ولها موضعان:

١- قبل الفعل العادي

- I sometimes visit my friend.

٢- بعد فعل (to be) في تصريفاته التالية are/ is/ am

- They are usually late for work.

ملحوظة

◉ الفعل المنتهى بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف (ساكن) نحذف الـ(y) ونضع (ies) .

- He studies hard.

◉ ولكن إذا انتهى الفعل بـ(y) مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضع (s) فقط ولا تحذف الـ(y).

- He plays computer games.

◉ الفعل المنتهى بالحروف الآتية (o - x - ch - sh - ss) نضيف للفعل (es) .

- He washes his hands.

must & mustn't

must + مصدر الفعل

◉ نستخدم .inf + must للتعبير عن ضرورة فعل شيء ما:

- I must buy some oranges.

mustn't + مصدر الفعل

◉ ونستخدم .inf + mustn't (must not) للتعبير عن المنع أو النهي.

- We mustn't talk in the library.

◉ لاحظ لا يأتي to بعد must / mustn't

Study the following

1. Three million people in Egypt work in tourism.
   يعمل فى مجال السياحة في مصر ثلاثة ملايين فرد.
2. A tour guide is an important job.
   العمل كمرشد سياحى وظيفة هامة.
3. Tour guides are friendly.
   المرشدون السياحيون ودودين.
4. Nubia has many historical monuments.
   تمتاز النوبة بالعديد من الآثار التاريخية.
5. The Great Temple in Nubia is wonderful.
   المعبد الكبير بالنوبة رائع.
6. We bought souvenirs from the market.
   قمنا بشراء الهدايا التذكارية من السوق.
7. It was the best day of our holiday!
   لقد كان أفضل يوم فى إجازتنا!
8. The chef made us a delicious traditional dinner.
   أعد لنا الشيف / الطاهى عشاء تقليديًا لذيذًا.



1 Listen and read. Underline all the jobs in the text as you hear them :

أنصت وأقرأ، ضع خطًا تحت كل الوظائف المذكورة فى النص عند سماعك إياها :


استمع إلى النص:

My trip to Nubia with a tour guide

Abu Simbel

Today more than three million people in Egypt work in tourism. There are hotel managers, waiters, chefs, boat captains, hotel workers, farmers, drivers, and shop owners(1). All of these people help to make Egypt one of the world's best places to visit for a holiday. And of course, one of the most important jobs is a tour guide.

Tour guides show(2) tourists the country they are visiting. They need to know about the places that the tourists want to visit, but they also need to be friendly and welcoming(3) so that the tourists have a good holiday.

One place you will find amazing Egyptian tour guides is in Nubia. Nubia has many historical monuments and interesting places to see, like the Great Temple(4) of Ramses II, Elephantine Island, and the island of Philae(5). One of my favorite trips last year was to the small village of Abu Simbel. The hotel chef had prepared a delicious breakfast of bread, yogurt(6), and fresh fruit for us to eat before we left with Ali, our tour guide. Rami, the taxi driver, told us stories of old Nubia and its history all the way to Abu Simbel. The Great Temple is wonderful and Ali told us all about its history.

He knew such a lot and we learned so much from him. It's amazing to think that builders, architects, and archaeologists(7) were able to move the enormous temples! We also bought souvenirs(8) from the market traders near the temples. Rami took us to a local restaurant where the chef made us a delicious traditional dinner and we watched the beautiful sunset over Abu Simbel. It was the best day of our holiday!

Arabic Meaning

١- أصحاب محلات
٢- يبين / يعرض
٣- مرحبين
٤- معبد
٥- جزيرة فيلة
٦- زبادي
٧- علماء آثار
٨- هدايا تذكارية

2 Read again and circle : أقرأ مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول b أو a :

1. What is the main point in the first paragraph?

   a to give a list of jobs in tourism

   b to say that there are many different jobs in tourism

2. Why does the writer think that tour guides are important?

   a they work with drivers and big hotels

   b because they know the most about the sites in Egypt

3. Why does the writer tell us that the taxi driver 'told us stories of old Nubia'?

   a to show that the writer had an interesting time on the journey

   b to show that all taxi drivers are fun

4. Which people did the writer meet at Abu Simbel?

   a market traders b builders

5. Why did Ali tell the writer about the builders, architects, and archaeologists?

   a Because they are part of the temple's geography.

   b Because they were able to do something very important with the temples.

3 Imagine you are a tour guide in Egypt. Choose a good place for tourists. Find out some facts and other information. Write about it:

تخيل انك مرشدًا سياحيًا فى مصر. أختر مكانًا جيدًا للسياح. أعرض بعض الحقائق والمعلومات وأكتب عنه :

1 

Aswan Botanical Garden

2 

Karnak Temple



Do you think is it important for people with jobs in tourism to be friendly? Why?

3 

Temple of Philae

4 

Abu Simbel

4 Look, read, and write. Use the correct form of the verbs in the box : أنظر وأقرأ واكتب : استخدم الصيغة الصحيحة للأفعال الآتية :

ask - check - cook - cut - drive - open

1 

1- I .....drive..... to work at 10 am.

2 

2 - I .... the menu and make sure we have the right food.

3 

3 - My boss .... me to prepare the vegetables.

4 

4- I .... the vegetables with a sharp knife.

5 

5 - At midday, the manager .... the restaurant.

6 

6 -We .... lots of delicious food for our customers.

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the present simple:
أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للأفعال فى زمن المضارع البسيط:

1. Mrs Soha ..works.. (work) in a school.
2. My sister .... (study) at Mansoura University.
3. We .... (play) computer games at the weekend.
4. I .... (eat) yogurt and melon for breakfast.
5. Mr Said .... (catch) the bus to Cairo every morning.

6 Read. What is Walid's job?
اقرأ. ما وظيفة وليد؟

Walid looks after hippos. He must make sure they are happy and healthy. He must prepare their food. He must give them fresh water to drink. He must give them a bath. He must even clean their teeth!

Answer: zoo keeper



7 Complete the sentences with must or mustn't :
أكمل الجمل بـ mustn't أو must :

1. I ..must.. do my English homework. ✓
2. You .... walk on the grass. ✗
3. You .... look after the environment. ✓
4. Nadim .... tidy up the kitchen. ✓
5. Nahla .... wake her sick brother up. ✗
6. You .... forget to take a hat today. ✗



Activities

1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c:
اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. We .... look after the environment.
   a doesn't b can't c must
2. Mustafa bought .... from Abu Simbel.
   a temples b souvenirs c environment
3. Salma .... her car to work every day.
   a drives b drive c driving
4. I .... the vegetables with a sharp knife.
   a cutting b cut c cuts
5. People in Egypt are friendly and ....
   a sharp b welcoming c sad
6. Children .... listen to their parents.
   a doesn't b must c aren't
7. Walid doesn't .... to school early.
   a arrive b arrives c arriving
8. .... Hany study English?
   a Do b Is c Does

2 Read and match:
اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The taxi driver	a. tourists the country.
2 Tour guides show	b. great monuments.
3 Elephantine Island	c. drives people.
4 Nubia has many	d. his homework.
5 Mustafa must do	e. is a historical place.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. clean - must - teeth - Taqwa - her.

----

2. are - They - welcoming - friendly - and.

----

3. helps - country - Tourism - our.

----

4. the - day - best - It - was - of - our - holiday.

----

4 Read and complete the sentences: أقرأ وأكمل الجمل:

1. He .... (play) football in the club on Fridays.
2. Magda .... (must) go to school late.
3. Fahd .... (eat) bread and cheese every day.
4. Hoda .... (mustn't) study for the exam.

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

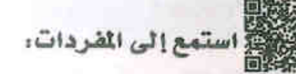
1. mustafa and muhammad must look after Heba

----

2. what does abdullah do

Lesson 4 ★ The Ant and the Grasshopper















buzz	ant	grasshopper	fence
يطن (النحلة)	نملة	جرادة	سور

hop away	يقفز بعيدًا	relaxing	مسترخي
rest against	يستريح مستندًا على	boring	ممل (غير ممتع)

Adjectives صفات

lazy	كسول	strange	غريب
cold	بارد	hungry	جوعان
surprised	مندهش	lovely	رائع
full of	ممتلىء بـ		

Other words كلمات أخرى

butterfly	فـراشـة	conversation	محـــادثـة
fall	فصل الخريف	winter	فصل الشتاء
spring	فصل الربيع	inside	بالداخل
suddenly	فجأة	garden	حديقة
soon	قريبًا	field	حقل
sound	صوت	have fun	يستمتع بوقته

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
carry on يستمر / يواصل	carried on
buzz يطن (صوت النحلة)	buzzed
harvest يحصد	harvested
reply يرد	replied
ignore يتجاهل	ignored
prepare يجهز	prepared
hop away يقفز بعيدًا	hopped away
knock on يطرق الباب	knocked on

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
hear يسمع	heard
find out يكتشف	found out
understand يفهم	understood
shine تشرق الشمس	shone

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 للسؤال عن أحداث تقع الآن

What (am, is, are) + فاعل + v + ing?

- What are the butterflies doing?

والإجابة :
- The butterflies are flying in the sun.

2 للتعبير عن الاقتراح

Why don't you + inf مصدر الفعل?

- Why don't you visit Luxor with me?

للإجابة بالموافقة :
- Sure, I think it'll be fun.

والإجابة بالاعتذار:
- Thank you, but I need to do my homework.

Study the following

1. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers.
الشمس ساطعة والحقول والحدائق مليئة بالزهور.
2. It's a lovely day.
إنه يوم جميل.
3. Why don't you stop working?
لم لا تتوقف عن العمل؟
4. We must think about the future.
علينا أن نفكر في المستقبل.
5. The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing.
يقضي ذكر الجراد الكسول معظم وقته مسترخيًا.
6. I need to carry on my work.
أريد أن أستمر في عملي.
7. It's very important to work hard.
من المهم أن تعمل بجد.
8. The ant doesn't stop working.
النملة لا تتوقف عن العمل.

1 Listen and read. What does the Grasshopper want to do?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا يريد ذكر الجراد أن يفعل؟

استمع إلى النص:

1



It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields[1] and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects[2] to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard.

2



The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He doesn't like to work. Today, he is resting against a tree when he hears a strange sound[3]. He wants to find out what it is. He looks over the garden fence.

Arabic Meaning

١- الحقول
٢- حشرات
٣- صوت

3



"What are you doing, Ant?" asks the grasshopper. "I'm working," replies[4] the ant. "But it's a beautiful day," says the grasshopper.

"Why don't you stop working and we can have some fun?" "Thank you, but I need to carry on with my work," says the ant.

4



"But working is so boring," replies the grasshopper. "Maybe," says the ant, "but it's something we all have to do. We must think about the future, not just today." The grasshopper didn't understand and so he just hops away[5].

٤- يرد
٥- يقفز بعيدًا

5



Soon, it is fall[6]. The ant has worked hard and all his crops have grown well. The ant doesn't stop working until he has harvested[7] all the food and taken it inside for the winter.

٦- فصل الخريف
٧- حصد
٨- فجاة
٩- يطرق الباب

6



Soon, it is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. Suddenly[8], he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on[9] the ant's door. "I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry." "Come in," says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too."

2 Read and circle: اقرأ وضع دائرة:

1. The grasshopper is surprised when he sees the ant because …
   - a The ant doesn't like playing football.
   - b The ant is ignoring him.
   - c The ant is working hard to prepare for winter.
   - d The ant prefers to play with other insects.

2. The Ant and the Grasshopper teaches us …
   - a that ants are boring insects.
   - b that it's important to work to prepare for the future.
   - c that some insects work harder than others.
   - d that it's important to have fun every day.

3 Discuss these questions with a partner: ناقش الأسئلة مع زميل:

1. What did the ant do during the spring? ------------------------
2. What did the grasshopper do during the spring? ------------------------
3. Was the ant prepared for the winter? ------------------------
4. Was the grasshopper prepared for the winter? ------------------------
5. What do you think the grasshopper will do next spring? ----------------





/aʊ/ ow - ou		/aɪ/ y - igh		/ɔɪ/ oy - oi	
down	أسفل	why	لماذا	boy	ولد
town	مدينة	light	ضوء	enjoy	يستمتع بـ
brown	بنى	buy	يشترى	point	يشير
loud	عالى الصوت	eye	عين	toy	لعبة
mouse	فأر	try	يجرب	noise	ضوضاء

- لاحظ فى الجزء السابق كل صوت والكلمات والحروف التى تمثله.

- ندرس فى هذا الدرس الأصوات المدمجة (المركبة) Diphthongs حيث تتكون من نطق حرفين متحركين جاءا فى كلمة وليس بينهما فاصل وتنتج عنها صوت جديد.
- فمثلاً كلمة (town) لايفصل بين الحرفين المتحركين بحرف ساكن فيكونا مقطعًا صوتيًا واحدًا.

Unit 5 Jobs we do

1 Listen and repeat : استمع وردد:

/aʊ/	/aɪ/	/ɔɪ/
down	why	boy
town	light	enjoy

2 Say. Write the words in the correct group in Exercise 1:
قل. اكتب الكلمات حسب المجموعة الصحيحة وفقا للتمرين رقم (١):

1- brown 4- loud 7- point	2- buy 5- mouse 8- toy	3- eye 6- noise 7- try



- اللاحقة عبارة عن حرف أو مجموعة أحرف تضاف إلى نهاية بعض الكلمات فتغير معناها.

- وندرس هنا اللاحقة (-ist) التي تعنى أن شخص ما يقوم بوظيفة معينة ونستخدمها فى الكلمات التى تدل على الوظائف. فمثلاً كلمة (journal) يقصد بها جريدة وبعد إضافة (ist) إليها تتغير إلي كلمة (journalist) وتعنى (صحفى).

(ist) words


boiologist
عالم أحياء


journalist
صحفى


receptionist
موظف استقبال


pianist
عازف بيانو


scientist
عالم


dentist
طبيب أسنان

3 Look and write : انظر واكتب:


1 She's a biolog ....


2 She's a pian ....


3 She's a journal ....


4 He's a reception ....


5 He's a scient ....




This is a pie chart

Pie charts الرسوم البيانية الدائرية

- الرسم البياني الدائري هو طريق لعرض المعلومات:
- حيث نقسم الدائرة الى أجزاء حيث يمثل كل جزء معلومة ما فلو فرضنا اننا نريد تمثيل الاتى شخص يقضى ٨ ساعات فى عمل اشياء مختلفة

٤ ساعات للمذاكرة

٢ ساعة للرياضة

٢ ساعة للهواية

- يكون تمثيلها برسم بيانى دائرى كالتالى:

 المذاكرة  الرياضة  الهواية 

4 **A pie chart is a way of showing information. Look. What is the most popular job? :**

الرسم البياني الدائرى وسيلة لعرض المعلومات . أنظر ما هى الوظيفة الأكثر شيوعاً؟

What job do you want to do?	
police officer	16
teacher	24
farmer	20
animal keeper	8
dentist	13
doctor	19



5 **Match the tables to the pie charts:** صل الجداول بالرسم البياني الدائري:

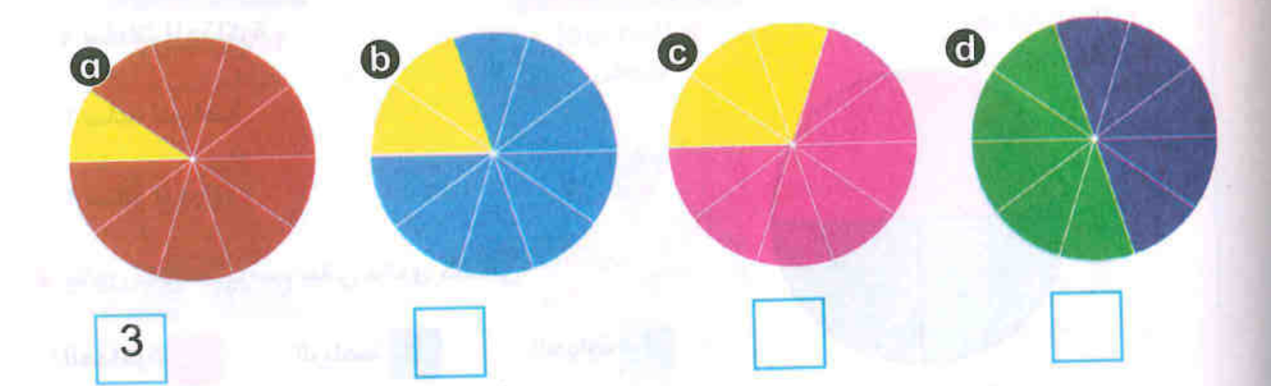
- انظر إلى الأرقام التى تمثل الرسم البيانى الدائرى ومن خلالها ستعرف ما تمثله كل دائرة.

1- Do you want to work indoors or outdoors?	
indoors	7
outdoors	3

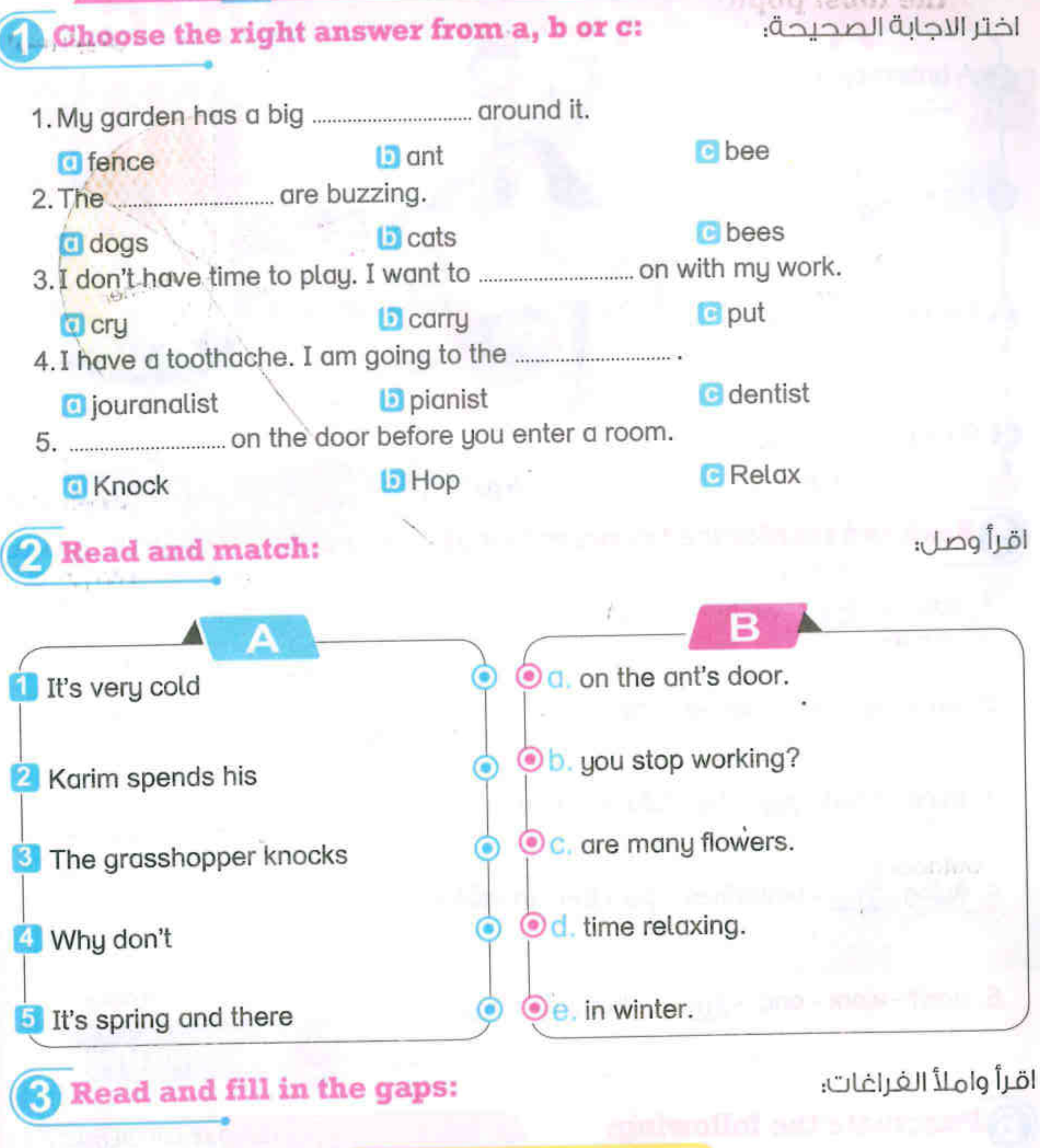
2- Do you want to wear a uniform at work?	
yes	2
no	8

3- Do you want to work with animals?	
yes	1
no	9

4- Do you want to work in an office?	
yes	5
no	5







1 **Choose the right answer from a, b or c:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My garden has a big .... around it.
   a fence b ant c bee
2. The .... are buzzing.
   a dogs b cats c bees
3. I don't have time to play. I want to .... on with my work.
   a cry b carry c put
4. I have a toothache. I am going to the ....
   a jouranalist b pianist c dentist
5. .... on the door before you enter a room.
   a Knock b Hop c Relax

2 **Read and match:** اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 It's very cold	a. on the ant's door.
2 Karim spends his	b. you stop working?
3 The grasshopper knocks	c. are many flowers.
4 Why don't	d. time relaxing.
5 It's spring and there	e. in winter.

3 **Read and fill in the gaps:** اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

journalist - lazy - carry on

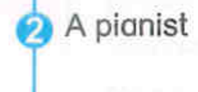
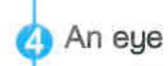
Hamdy is very active. He is never ❶.................... at school. He likes to ❷.................... his work all the time. He dreams to be a ❸.................... .

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

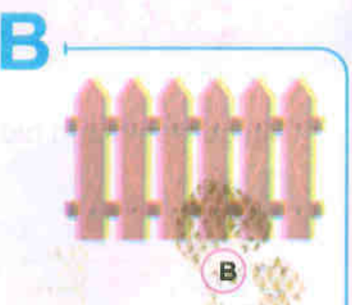
4 Match: صل:



A		B
1 A grasshopper		
2 A pianist		
3 Fence		
4 An eye		


(A)


(B)



(C)


(D)



5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. day - a - It's - lovely .
----
2. work - He - like - doesn't - to.
----
3. think - must - We - the - future - about.
----
4. flying - The - butterflies - are - the - in - ski.
----
5. don't - work - and - I'm - I - hungry - now.
----

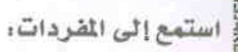
6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. my friend salma wants to be a doctor
----
2. what did amr do in the spring

Lessons 5&6 ★ Writing

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:





vet طبيب بيطرى


The countryside الريف

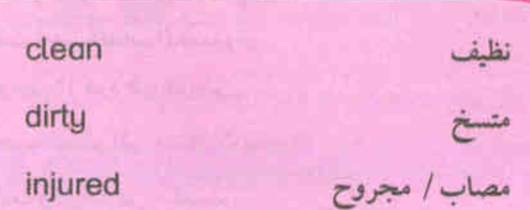

computer programmer مبرمج كمبيوتر


operation عملية جراحية

Other words كلمات أخرى

aim	هدف
problems	مشاكل
distance	مسافة
experiment	تجربة فى المعمل
reports	تقارير
teamwork	العمل الجماعى
I don't mind	لا أمانع
keen on	حريص على
scare	يخيف
solutions	حلول
teammates	زملاء الفريق
tropical	استوائى
concert	حفل موسيقى
outdoors	فى الخارج (خارج المبانى)
office job	وظيفة داخل مكتب

Adjectives صفات



clean	نظيف
dirty	متسخ
injured	مصاب / مجروح
keen on	حريص على
younger	أصغر سنًا
early	مبكرًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
solve	يحل مشكلة	solved	bring	يحضر	brought
mind	يمانع	minded	write	يكتب	wrote
prefer	يفضل	preferred	get sick	يمرض	got sick
workout	يستنبط / يجد حل	worked out	win	يفوز	won

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

Would you prefer / like to + inf. مصدر الفعل?

1 السؤال عن التفضيل

◉ السؤال عن التفضيل فى أعمال / أشياء.

- Would you like / prefer to work as a vet?

◉ هل تفضل العمل كطبيب بيطرى؟

- Yes, I'd like / prefer to. I can work with animals. وللاجابة بالإثبات:
- No, I'd prefer not to. - I can't work with animals. الاجابة بالنفى:

Study the following

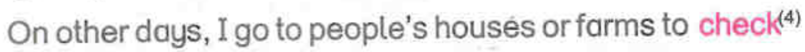
1. I work with animals and I love my job. أعمل فى مجال الحيوانات، وأحب عملى .
2. I help to make animals better. أساعد فى جعل الحيوانات أفضل.
3. I love the countryside. أحب الريف .
4. What's the worst part of the job? ما هو أسوء ما فى العمل؟
5. I loved playing computer games. كنت أحب ألعاب الكمبيوتر.
6. These are 16 people in my team. يوجد ١٦ فرد فى فريقى.
7. I like travelling long distances. احب السفر الى مسافات بعيدة.
8. I wanted an office job. أردت وظيفة فى مكتب.

9. I'm good at making new friends. انى جيد فى تكوين صداقات جديدة.
10. I work in a team for the school concert. أعمل فى فريق للحفل الموسيقى المدرسى.
11. You can't win a football match by yourself. لا تستطيع الفوز بمباراة كرة القدم بمفردك.

1 Read. What are Rana and Sherif's jobs? أقرأ، ما هى وظائف رنا وشريف؟

استمع إلى النص:

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured(1), I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring(2) their animals to me. If an animal needs an operation(3), the room has to be very, very clean.



On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check(4) on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind(5)! I lived on a farm when I was younger, so I'm used to it(6), and I love the countryside. What's the worst part of the job? It's when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!

Arabic Meaning
١- مصاب
٢- يحضر
٣- عملية جراحية
٤- يفحص
٥- يمانع
٦- أعتدت على الأمر

Rana is a doctor / (vet).

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare(1) me! I'm not keen on(2) being outside, so I wanted an office job(3). When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems(4). So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree(5), but we work out the best solutions(6).

Arabic Meaning
١- يخيف
٢- حريص على
٣- وظيفة مكتبية
٤- حل المشاكل
٥- يتفق
٦- حلول

Sherif is a computer programmer / vet.

2 Read again and answer : أقرا مرة أخرى وأجب:

1. What does Rana like about working with animals?
----
2. Why did Sherif not want to work with animals?
----

3. Would you prefer to have Rana's job or Sherif's job? Why?

---

3 **Read the ideas in the box and write about a job you want and a job you don't want. Give reasons. Write 30 – 40 words :**

اقرأ الأفكار الموجودة بالصندوق وأكتب عن وظيفة ترغب فيها وأخرى لا ترغب فيها. أعطى الأسباب. أكتب من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠ كلمة :

When you're thinking about a job, it's important to think about what you like and dislike. Think about …

- being indoors or outdoors
- traveling long distances
- getting up very early
- writing reports
- meeting / talking to new people

It's also important to think about what you're good at and what you're not so good at. Think about …

- solving problems
- helping sick people / animals
- making new friends
- reading lots of information
- working in a team

When I'm older, I want to be a … because … . I think this is a good job for me because I like … . I'm good at … and I enjoy … .
I don't want to be a … because I'm not good at … . Also, I don't really enjoy … .

4 **Read. Can you think of other times when you work in a team? Do you like it?**

اقرأ. هل يمكنك أن تفكر فى أوقات أخرى عندما كنت تعمل فيها فى فريق؟ هل تحب الأمر؟

Teamwork

I work in a team in science when we're doing an experiment.



I work in a team when I'm playing football.



I work in a team when I help Mom in the kitchen at home.



I work in a team for the school concert[1].

When you work in a team, you work with other people to do something together[2]. For example, the aim of a football team is to win. You work with your teammates[3] to do this. You can't win a football match by yourself!

Arabic Meaning
١- حفلة موسيقية
٢- معًا
٣- زملاء الفريق



Activities

1 **Choose the right answer from a, b or c:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... helps to make animals better.
   a vet   b football player   c computer programmer
2. The operation room must be ....
   a dirty   b the worst   c clean
3. I love .... new friends.
   a doing   b making   c working
4. You can't .... a match by yourself.
   a bring   b write   c win
5. He is clever. He can .... out th solution.
   a help   b work   c agree

2 **Read and fill in the gaps:** اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

help - vet - sick

I love all kinds of animals. When I'm older, I want to be a ❶ .... I enjoy working with ❷ .... animals. We should ❸ .... them at all times.

3 **Read and reorder the following to make sentences:** أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. want - an - job - I - office.

   ----

2. make - animals - I - help - to - better.

   ----

3. wants - be - Sally - to - a - programmer - computer.

   ----

4. are - 16 people - in - There - my - team.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



My job

vet - kind - check - better - sick - like



5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. hello, I m Mohamed

----

2. where does ali have lunch



Review

Jobs in Ancient Egypt


sculptures
تماثيل


grains
حبوب


hieroglyphs
اللغة الهيروغليفية


scribe
كاتب (عند الفراعنه)


jewelry
مصوغات


farmers
فلاحين


paintings
لوحات


craftsmen
حرفيين


records
سجلات


flax
بذور الكتان

Ecosystems


Marine ecosystem
النظام البيئى البحرى


Freshwater ecosystem
النظام البيئى للمياه العذبة


Desert ecosystem
النظام البيئى الصحراوى


Rockpool ecosystem
النظام البيئى لبركة مياه صخرية


crab
كابوريا


rocks
صخور


sunlight
ضوء الشمس


fish
سمك


rainforest
غابة مطيرة


insect
حشرة


sand
رمل


seaweed
اعشاب بحرية / طحالب

Unit 5 Jobs we do

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
plant	يزرع	planted
respect	يحترم	respected
prepare	يجهز	prepared
carry on	يستمر فى	carried on
harvest	يحصد	harvested
knock on	يطرق (باب)	knocked on

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
become	يصبح	became
weave	ينسج	wove
spend	يقضي (وقت)	spent
show	يوضح / يعرض	showed
leave	يغادر / يترك	left
understand	يفهم	understood
shine	يسطع	shone

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

Form التكوين

- يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من التصريف الأول للفعل.

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع → (inf.)فعل فى المصدر

- I eat fruit.

- ويضاف للفعل (ies / es / s) مع الضمائر (He / She / It) .

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → (inf.)فعل فى المصدر + s / es / ies

- He eats fruit. - She catches a bus. - He flies a plane

must & mustn't

- نستخدم must + inf. للتعبير عن ضرورة فعل شيء ما
- ونستخدم mustn't + inf. (must not) للتعبير عن المنع أو النهي.

- I must buy some oranges.
- We mustn't talk in the library.

Pronunciation

/aʊ /ow - ou	
down	اسفل
town	مدينة
brown	بنى
loud	عالى الصوت
mouse	فأر

/aɪ /y - igh	
why	لماذا
light	ضوء
buy	يشترى
eye	عين
try	يجرب

/ɔɪ /oy - oi	
boy	ولد
enjoy	يستمتع بـ
point	يشير
toy	لعبة
noise	ضوضاء

Writing Skills مهارات الكتابة

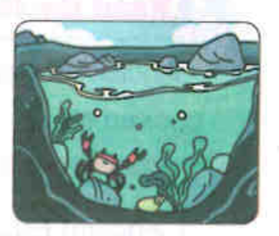
Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

Lesson 1
Jobs in Ancient Egypt



1. There were many jobs in Ancient Egypt. Farmers grew grains. They worked in fields. Few people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write.

Lesson 2
Rockpool ecosystems



2. This is a rockpool ecosystem. The rockpool is a small area of water with rocks. It has living things in it. There are crabs, fish and seaweed. They are amazing things.

Lessons 5&6
The vet



3. My name is Hisham. I work as a vet. I like helping a lot of kinds of animals. When animals get better, I feel so happy. I really like my job.

Activity Unit 5
A trip to Nubia





4. Last week, we visited Nubia. It had many historical places. We visited Abu Simbel Temple. In Aswan, we went to the Botanical Garden. The trip was really great.

Azhar Exercises



الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose: استمع واختر:

1. Plants need sunlight and - - - - - - - - . (air - water - food)
2. Walid looks after - - - - - - - - . (monkeys - lions - hippos)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل:

craftsman - doing - homework

A : What are you - - - - - ? B : I 'm doing my - - - - - - - .

A : What do you want to be ? B : I want to be a - - - - - - - - - - - - - .

C- Reading

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Ancient Egyptian women worked at .... (farmer - home - school)
2. Women cooked .... (meals - games - books)
3. Egyptian women took care of their .... (cars - children - team)

D- The Reader

4 Read and write (True) or (False): اقرأ واكتب صح أم خطأ:

		True	False
1	Hany is a geologist.		
2	Hany says that all reptiles are dangerous.		

E- Usage

5 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The boys are .... football.
   a flying b swimming c playing
2. We mustn't .... in the library.
   a talks b talk c talked



Activity



1 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Wheat, corn and flax are called ....
   a vegetables b grains c fruit
2. It is hot. You .... forget to take a hat today.
   a must b should c mustn't
3. A .... works in a hotel.
   a doctor b receptionist c biologist
4. We bought some .... from Nubia.
   a souvenirs b fences c bees
5. Sherif .... a bus to his school every day.
   a catch b catches c catching

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Plants need sunlight	a. travel by boats.
2 Traders sometimes	b. to live.
3 Camels live in	c. many places.
4 Tourists visit	d. a lot of crops.
5 Farmers grow	e. the desert.

3 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

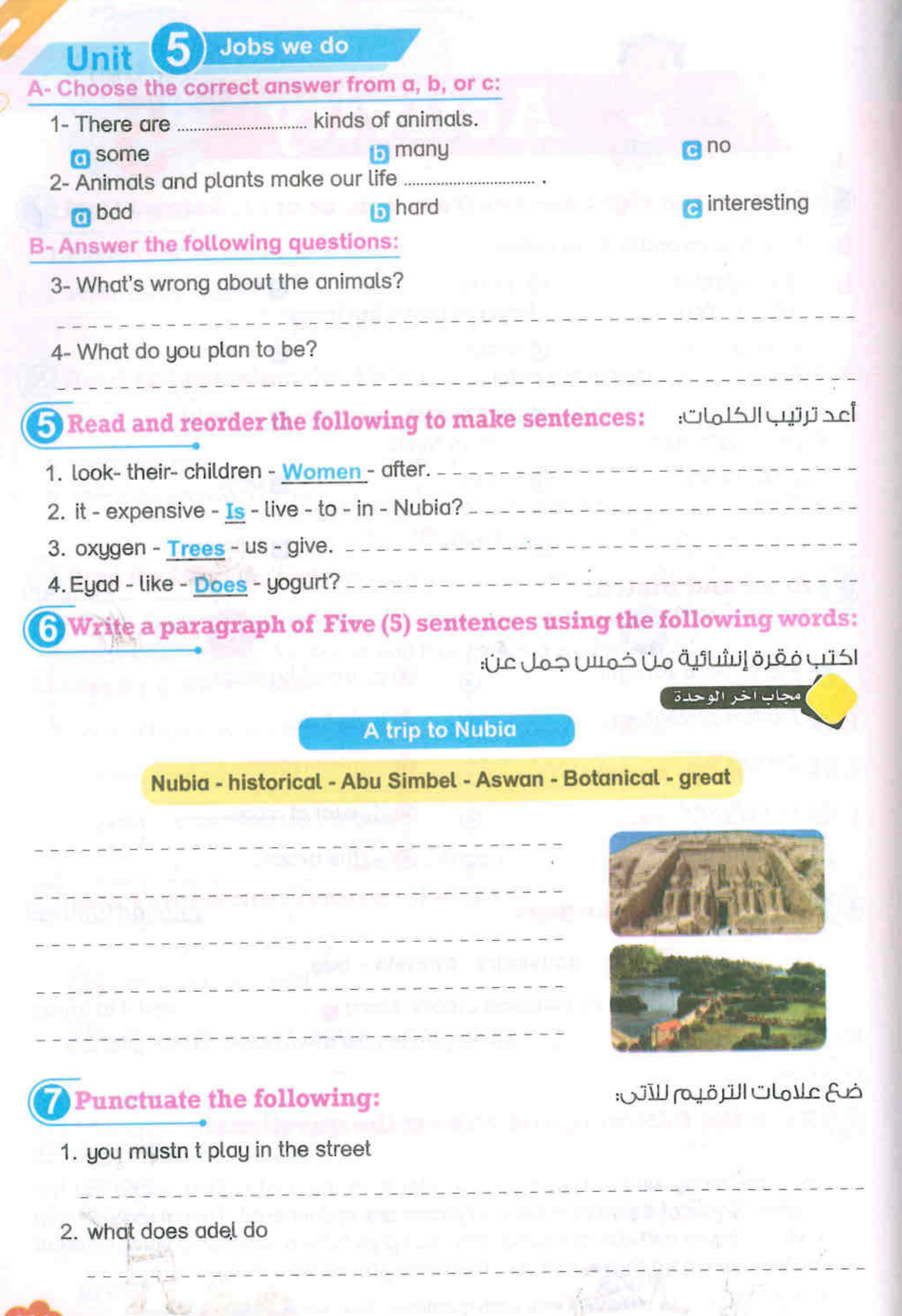
souvenirs - tourists - buy

Egypt is famous for its historical places. Many (1) .... visit it to enjoy the temples. They (2) .... some gifts to take them home. These gifts are called (3) ....

4 Read the following and answer the questions: اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many kinds of animals and plants in the world. They make our life interesting. Some of these animals and plants are endangered. They need our help to survive in better and suitable conditions. So I plan to be a scientist to study different ecosystems and help these animals. The world should help, too.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة



A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

1- There are .... kinds of animals.

a some b many c no

2- Animals and plants make our life ....

a bad b hard c interesting

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What's wrong about the animals?

4- What do you plan to be?

----

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. look- their- children - Women - after. ----------------------
2. it - expensive - Is - live - to - in - Nubia? ----------------------
3. oxygen - Trees - us - give. ----------------------
4. Eyad - like - Does - yogurt? ----------------------

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب اخر الوحدة

A trip to Nubia

Nubia - historical - Abu Simbel - Aswan - Botanical - great

----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. you mustn t play in the street

----

2. what does adel do

Theme 2

Myself and others

Unit 6

What's the weather like?

ما حال الطقس؟

Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about the weather.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجرى بحثًا ويكتب عن الطقس.
2. Read and listen to a short story about a heat wave.
   - يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة عن موجة حارة.
3. Use adverbs of frequency with the present simple.
   - يستخدم الطالب ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط.
4. Understand a text about natural resources.
   - يفهم الطالب نص عن الموارد الطبيعية.
5. Understand a dialog about water pollution.
   - يفهم الطالب محادثة عن تلوث المياة.
6. Learn to distinguish the /p/ and /b/ sounds and silent letters in words.
   - يتعلم الطالب التمييز بين الأصوات /p/ و /b/ والحروف غير المنطوقة فى الكلمات.
7. Use measurements of length and weight.
   - يستخدم الطالب القياسات الخاصة بالطول والوزن.
8. Write an account of extreme weather.
   - يكتب الطالب بيانًا عن الطقس القاسي.
9. Research and make a leaflet about what to do in extreme weather.
   - يجري الطالب بحثًا ويصنع منشورًا حول ما يجب القيام به فى الطقس القاسي.

LESSON 1

★ The weather Part 1




Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:


cloud
سحابة


cloudy
ملبد بالغيوم


rain
مطر


rainy
ممطر


wind
رياح


windy
عاصف (شديد الرياح)




sun
الشمس


sunny
مشمس


snow
جليد


ice
ثلج


rainbow
قوس قزح

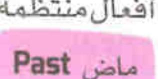

storm
عاصفة

Other words كلمات أخرى

presenter	مُقدِّم برنامج
weatherwoman	خبيرة الأرصاد الجوية
news	أخبار
normal	طبيعي
shade	ظل
special climate	مناخ خاص
variety	تنوع

night	الليل
keep cool	يحافظ على برودته
warm	دافئ
per year	كل عام
around	حوالي
day	النهار
degree	درجة الحرارة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال



Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
believe	يعتقد / يصدق	believed
ask	يسأل	asked
call	ينادي	called
rain	تمطر	rained

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
bring	يحضر	brought
come	يأتي	came
fall down	يسقط	fell down
get up	ينهض	got up
hear	يستمع	heard
run	يجري	ran

Study the following

1. I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today.
- انقل لكم اليوم أخبار الطقس فى مصر.
2. It's going to be rainy in Cairo.
سيكون الجو ممطرًا فى القاهرة.
3. How often does it rain in Cairo?
- كم مره تمطر فى القاهرة؟
4. It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice.
- لايكون الجو باردًا جدًا فى شرم الشيخ، ولكن اليوم لدينا بعض الثلج.
5. Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!
- ستواجه الأقصر عاصفة، لذا ابق فى المنزل!
6. We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt.
- لدينا تنوع رائع فى الطقس فى مصر.
7. The desert has a very special climate.
- الصحراء لها مناخ ذات طبيعة خاصة للغاية.
8. It was hot and sunny last weekend and I stayed at home.
- لقد كان الجو حار ومشمس نهاية الاسبوع الماضى ومكثت بالمنزل.
8. The Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt.
- نهر النيل ذو أهمية عند الجميع فى مصر.
10. Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo.
- الاسكندرية لديها حوالي ثمانية أضعاف الأمطار في القاهرة.

Unit 6 What's the weather like?

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

للتنبؤ عن حالة الطقس

نستخدم:

It's going to be + حالة الطقس + المكان

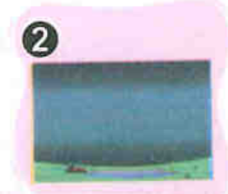
- It's going to be hot in Egypt.

لاحظ

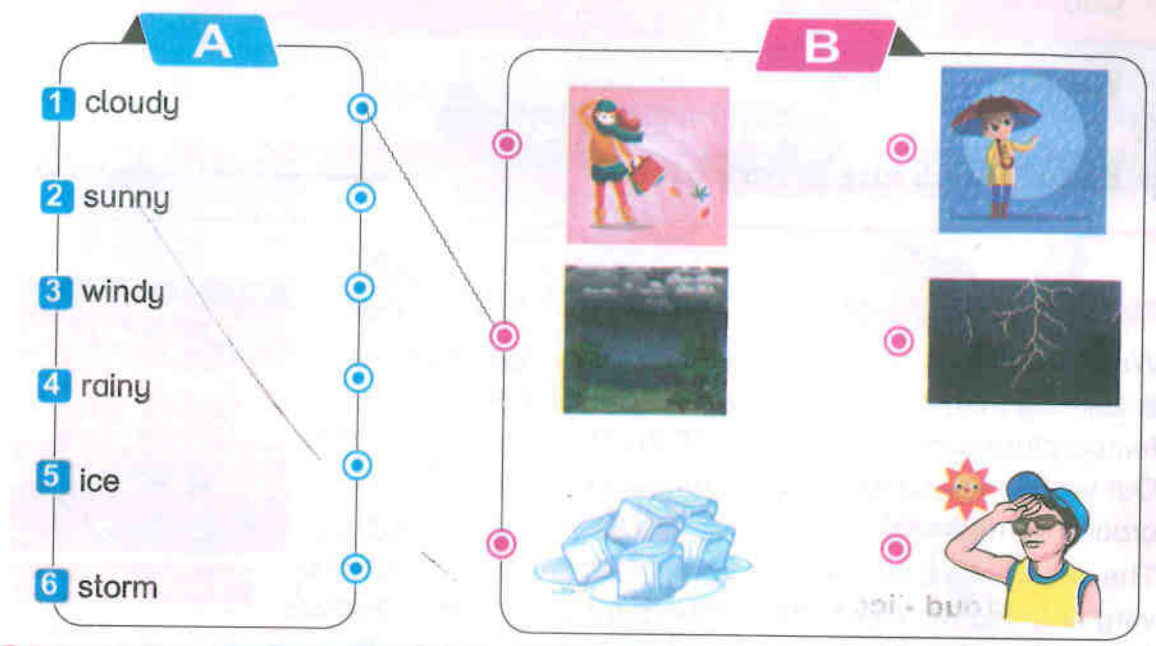
لاحظ الفرق بين (جليد snow) و (ثلج ice) حيث نستخدم كلمة (جليد snow) لوصف الجليد المتساقط من السماء وأعلى قمم الجبال ويكون لونه أبيض أما كلمة (ثلج ice) تصف الماء المجمد ويكون شفاف.

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

cloud - ice - rain - rainbow - snow - storm - sun - wind

1.  cloud
2.  ____________
3.  ____________
4. ____________
5.  ____________
6.  ____________
7.  ____________
8.  ____________

2 Look and match: انظر وصل:



3 Listen and circle. استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

عما يتحدثون:

- What are they talking about?

استمع إلى النص:

a weather in four cities in Egypt b weather in five cities in Egypt

Weatherwoman	: Good morning, everyone! I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo.
Presenter	: Rainy in Cairo? How often does it rain in Cairo? It's always sunny there!
Weatherwoman	: I know, but today it's rainy.
Presenter	: What about Sharm El-Sheikh?
Weatherwoman	: It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice.
Presenter	: I don't believe it! What about Alexandria?
Weatherwoman	: It's going to be windy. That's normal - it is sometimes windy in Alexandria.
Presenter	: Well, thank you. And, finally, what about Luxor?
Weatherwoman	: Oh, this is very important: Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!

4 Listen again and complete the table: استمع إلى النص مرة أخرى، ثم أكمل الجدول:

City	Cairo			
Weather	rainy			

5 Read. Which city is very green? اقرأ. أى مدينة تعد الأكثر خضرة؛

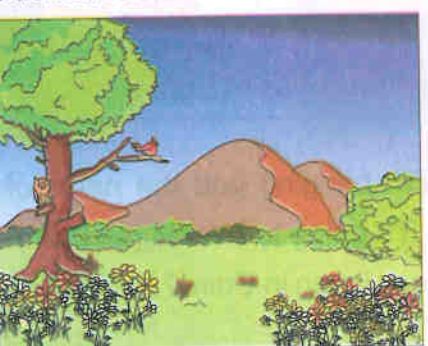
استمع إلى النص؛

The weather in Egypt

We have a nice variety(1) of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry(2). We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees(3) in some places! Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 degrees.

The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights, when the temperature can go to 0 degrees. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

It doesn't often rain in Cairo - there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so important(4) for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south.



By the sea, it rains a lot more - Alexandria has around eight times(5) more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!

Arabic Meaning

١- تنوع
٢- جاف
٣- درجات الحرارة
٤- هام
٥- ثمان مرات

6 Read again and write the places: اقرأ مرة أخرى وأكتب الأماكن؛

1. It has 25 mm per year. ....

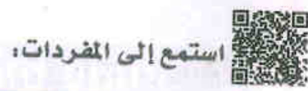
2. It's very dry. It's very hot in the day and very cold at night. ....

3. It rains a lot – about eight times more than Cairo. ....

Lesson 1 ★ The weather Part 2

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات؛





tornado إعصار



tidal wave موجة المد والجزر



strong winds / storm رياح قوية / عاصفة



sandstorm عاصفة رملية



extreme weather الطقس القاسي

heat wave موجة حارة







flood فيضان

Other words كلمات أخرى





cry	صرخة
nearby	قريب
shade	ظل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
knock	يطرق الباب	knocked
stay	يبقى	stayed
reply	يرد	replied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
become	يصبح	became
feel	يشعر	felt
know	يعرف	knew

Unit 6 What's the weather like?



Definitions تعريفات

A heat wave: It's when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything.

Study the following

1. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high.
   - الموجة الحارة تحدث عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة بدرجة كبيرة.
2. We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water.
   - لقد مكثنا في الظل وحاولنا شرب الكثير من الماء.
3. We came back on the shady side of the street.
   - عدنا من الجانب الذي به ظل في الشارع.
4. The very hot summer became a heat wave.
   - أصبح الصيف الحار جدًا موجة حارة.
5. Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s.
   - السيدة سهير هي سيدة عطوفة في السبعينات من عمرها.

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب :

flood - heat wave - sandstorm - strong winds / storm - tidal wave - tornado

1  tornado

2  ....

3  ....

4  ....

5  ....

6 ....

2 Read Talia's story. What did she and her friend do?

اقرأ قصة تاليا. ماذا فعلت هي وصديقتها؟

استمع إلى النص:

My heat wave[1] story

The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade[2] and tried to drink lots of water. Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store[3] to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down[4]. We went to the store. We came back on the shady side[5] of the street, and past all our friends' houses.

Suddenly, as we were passing Mrs Sohair's house, we heard a cry[6]. Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s[7] and lives with her son, but he goes to work in the day. Lamia and I were worried and Mrs Sohair's door was a bit open[8], so we knocked and called 'Mrs Sohair!' At first there was no reply, then we heard a quiet voice, 'I'm here!'

We went into the kitchen and she was on the floor! 'Help me!' she said. At first, we didn't know what to do, but then I ran outside and saw Mr Monib, who works nearby[9]. 'Mr Monib, please help Mrs Sohair!' I called. Mr Monib came running. We all helped get Mrs Sohair onto a chair, then we gave her lots of water and some of our fruit. She said she went to the kitchen to get some water, but she felt ill and fell down because it was so hot. She couldn't get up. She was very happy we heard her, and we were happy we could help her!

Arabic Meaning

١- موجة حارة
٢- ظل
٣- متجر
٤- تنعشنا
٥- الجانب الذي به ظل
٦- صرخة
٧- في السبعينات من عمرها
٨- مفتوح قليلاً
٩- بالجوار

3 Read again, and put the sentences in the correct order:

اقرأ مرة أخرى، ثم ضع الجمل في الترتيب الصحيح :

a. It was a very hot day. [1]
b. Talia's mom asked them to go to the store. [ ]
c. Mrs Sohair was lying on the floor. [ ]
d. Mr Monib and the girls helped Mrs Sohair. [ ]
e. They were on the street and heard a cry. [ ]
f. Talia and Lamia stayed in the shade at home. [ ]

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The hottest day in Egypt was 51.1° in Aswan.
أكثر يوم حرارة في مصر كانت درجة الحرارة ٥١,١ درجة في أسوان.



Activities



1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. It's going to be .... in Cairo.
   a rain b cloud c rainy
2. We have .... summers in Egypt.
   a rainy b hot c cold
3. It's very .... at night in the desert.
   a cold b hot c sunny
4. A .... is when the temperature goes very high.
   a tornado b flood c heat wave
5. Now the temperature in Cairo is 27 ....
   a degrees b marks c times

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Luxor is going to have a storm,	a. when it is very hot.
2 By the sea	b. cooler in Egypt.
3 Our winters are	c. rain in Cairo?
4 We stay in the shade	d. it rains a lot more.
5 How often does it	e. so stay at home!

3 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

cold - hot - desert

It's not easy to live in the ❶ .... The desert has a very special climate. It's very ❷ .... during the day and very ❸ .... at night.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. windy – Alexandria – is – sometimes – It – in.

----

2. it - How often - rain - does - Cairo - in?

----

3. weather - We - in - a nice - have - Egypt.

----

4. climate - The - special - a very - desert - has.

----

5 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The desert

climate - hot - desert - cold - night - day

----

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- it's going to be rainy in cairo

2- what about alexandria



Lesson 2 ★ How often do you ....?

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The present simple زمن المضارع البسيط

I - We - You - They - اسم جمع ⟶ (inf.)

He - She - It - اسم مفرد ⟶ (inf.) s / es / ies

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

◉ تُستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار حدوث الفعل. وتأتي ظروف التكرار عادة بعد (verb to be) وقبل الفعل الأساسي في الجملة كما يلي :

100%	80%	70%	50%	0%
always	usually	often	sometimes	never
دائمًا	عادة	غالبًا	أحيانًا	أبدًا

- I always go to the club on sunny Saturdays. (قبل فعل الجملة الأساسي)
- I often sit on our balcony on hot nights.

أو تأتي بعد verb to be كما يلي :

- I'm always in bed at 11 pm.
- It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh.

How often? كم عدد المرات؟

◉ تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط.

How often < do ⟶ I - you - we- they / does ⟶ he - she - it } + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

- How often do you play football?
- I always play football.
- How often does he play football?
- He never plays football.

Verbs and nouns أفعال تأتي مع أسماء

have a shower	يستحم	play video games	يلعب ألعاب فيديو
get up late	يستيقظ متأخرًا	make dinner	يُعد طعام العشاء
eat shawerma	يأكل الشاورما	speak English	يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية
eat strawberries	يأكل فراولة	do homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلي

1 **Write the words in the box in the correct place. Listen and check:**
اكتب الكلمات في المربع في المكان الصحيح. استمع وتحقق:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

never - often - sometimes - usually - always

100 %	80 %	70 %	50 %	0 %
always	-------	-------	-------	never

2 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**
ضع الكلمات بالترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل:

1. speak English - I - always - English class - in my.
   I always speak English in my English class.
   ----
2. meat - She - red - eats - never.
   ----
3. football - plays - He - with his friends - sometimes.
   ----
4. wake up - We - before 7 am - sometimes.
   ----
5. have - I - usually - a sandwich for lunch.
   ----
6. Ola - work - never - is - after- tired.

Activities



1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I visit my grandparents three times a week. I - - - - - - - visit them.
   a never b always c sometimes
2. Hany never goes to school late. He - - - - - - - - - goes to school early.
   a often b always c never
3. I - - - - - - - - - - play tennis. I can't play it.
   a never b sometimes c always
4. I always - - - - - - - - - - - - my grandparents on Saturdays.
   a visit b make c play
5. How - - - - - - - - - - - - - - do you read books?
   a always b often c never
6. I usually have a - - - - - - - for lunch.
   a sandwich b football c book
7. Adel - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - to the club on Fridays.
   a is sometimes b goes sometimes c sometimes goes

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:




A	B
1 Retaj always reads	a. Mom in the kitchen.
2 How often does	b. balcony on hot nights.
3 We always help	c. a book at night.
4 I often sit on our	d. English in his English class.
5 Nabil always speaks	e. Mariam go to the park?

3 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. tired - Amal - after - is - work - never. -
2. Salma - How often - play - does - tennis? -
3. wake up - We - before - sometimes - 7 am. -
4. eat - always - on - shawerma - We - Friday. -

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Lesson 3 ★ CLIL Science



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:






fruit فاكهة — leather جلد مدبوغ — silver فضة — milk لبن



copper نحاس — nuts مكسرات






eggs بيض — tin cans علب صفيح — wood خشب — cotton قطن




water مياه — gold ذهب — soil تربة

nature	الطبيعة
stay alive	يبقى على قيد الحياة
minerals	المعادن
fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري
renew	يجدد
coal	فحم

tin	القصدير
lead	الرصاص
zinc	الزنك
economy	الاقتصاد
oil	بترول
gas	غاز

Other words كلمات أخرى

keep healthy	يحافظ على صحته
living things	الكائنات الحية
transporting	النقل
goods	بضائع / سلع

cell phone	هاتف محمول
furniture	أثاث
cooker	بوتاجاز / موقد
product	منتج

Study the following

1. The things nature gives us are called natural resources .
   - الأشياء التي تمنحها لنا الطبيعة تسمى موارد طبيعية.
2. We can use these to stay alive and keep healthy.
   - نستخدمها لنبقى على قيد الحياة ونظل أصحاء.
3. We use gold and silver to make beautiful jewelry.
   - نستخدم الذهب والفضة لنصنع مصوغات جميلة.
4. Fossil fuels make the air polluted and we can't renew them.
   - الوقود الحفرى يجعل الهواء ملوث ولا نستطيع تجديده.
5. All these natural resources are important for our economies.
   - كل هذه الموارد الطبيعية مهمة لاقتصادنا.

1 Listen and read. What are natural resources?

استمع واقرأ. ما هي الموارد الطبيعية؟




Tapescript نص الاستماع — استمع إلى النص:

Our world is amazing. It gives us many things so we can have food, clothes, and build our houses. The things nature[1] gives us are called natural resources[2]. We can use these to stay alive[3] and keep healthy. Some examples of natural resources are water, clean air, animals, forests, soil, fossil fuels like oil and coal, and minerals[4] like gold and copper[5].
Water is the most important of all natural resources because all living things[6] need it to stay alive. We use it to drink, to give to our animals, and to grow plants. We also use it for cleaning, for clean energy, and for transporting[7] people and goods.
Clean air is also important to keep us and our crops healthy. We make furniture[8] from trees. We grow food in the soil. Fossil fuels[9] like oil, coal, and gas are also natural resources. They give us energy for our houses and fuel for our cars. But fossil fuels make the air polluted and we can't renew[10] them.

Arabic Meaning
١- الطبيعة
٢- الموارد الطبيعية
٣- يبقي على قيد الحياة
٤- معادن
٥- النحاس
٦- الكائنات الحية
٧- النقل
٨- الأثاث
٩- الوقود الحفري
١٠- يجدد

Other natural resources are minerals, and these include gold, silver, tin[11], copper, lead[12], and zinc[13]. We use gold and silver to make beautiful jewelry. We use the other minerals to make things like cell phones, pipes in our houses, cookers and fridges in our kitchens, computers, and cars.
All these natural resources are important for our economies[14]. We take the natural resources and use them to make new products. We then sell the products to other countries and buy things too.

١١- القصدير
١٢- الرصاص
١٣- الزنك
١٤- الاقتصاد

2 Complete the summary of the text: أكمل ملخص النص:

We use natural resources every day in our lives. The most important natural resource is ❶ ....water...... as we need it to survive. Clean ❷ .... is also very important. We use the ❸ .... from trees to make our furniture and houses. We get our energy from fossil ❹ .... As well as these, ❺ .... are also important for making things like fridges and cell phones. We use all these natural resources to make products to buy and sell to other ❻ ....

3 Read again. Then look and write the natural resources in the correct group: اقرأ مرة أخرى. ثم انظر واكتب الموارد الطبيعية في المجموعة الصحيحة.

1.  fruit
2.  leather
3.  silver
4.  milk
5.  copper
6.  nuts
7.  eggs
8.  tin cans
9.  wood
10.  cotton

Natural resources from plants مصادر طبيعية من النباتات	Natural resources from animals مصادر طبيعية من الحيوانات	Mineral resources مصادر معدنية
fruit	milk	copper



Activities

1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We use the .... from trees to make furniture.
   - a leather
   - b copper
   - c wood
2. We need .... to grow plants.
   - a silver
   - b water
   - c eggs
3. .... is a natural resource from animals.
   - a Leather
   - b Cotton
   - c Fruit
4. Mineral resources include ....
   - a wood
   - b silver
   - c nuts
5. We use silver and gold to make ....
   - a soil
   - b wood
   - c jewelry

2 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

air - fuels - water

The natural resources are very important in our lives. We need (1) .... to drink and wash. We need a clean (2) .... to breathe. We get our energy from fossil (3) ....

3 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. amazing - Our - world - is.

----

2. to - We - grow - use - vegetables - soil.

----

3. natural - you - resources - What - use - do?

----

4. natural - We - to make - use – resources - products.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

4 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:



Water

water - natural - resource - drink - grow - animals

----

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- oil coal and gas are fossil fuels

2- which natural resources are important for egypt

Lesson 4 ★ Pronunciation

استمع إلى المفردات:



يصدر كلاً من الصوتين /b/ و /p/ من نفس المنطقة في مقدمة الفم عن طريق الضغط بالشفتين على بعضهما البعض. لكنهما مختلفين جدا حيث أن الصوت /p/ لا يحدث اهتزاز في الأحبال الصوتية أثناء نطقه ويسمى (unvoiced) ويخرج هواء باندفاع من الفم عند نطقه ، أما الصوت /b/ فإنه يُحدث اهتزازاً في الأحبال الصوتية (voiced) مع عدم خروج هواء من الفم أثناء النطق حيث يشبه حرف (ب) في اللغة العربية.

وللتمييز بين النطقين يمكنك إحضار قطعة من الورق وتثبيتها أمام فمك ومحاولة نطق الصوت /p/ تلاحظ اهتزاز الورقة بسبب الهواء الخارج من الفم أثناء نطق الصوت وعند محاولة نطق الصوت /b/ تلاحظ عدم اهتزاز الورقة نتيجة لعدم خروج هواء من الفم.





Silent letters

الحروف الصامتة في اللغة الإنجليزية

- هناك بعض الكلمات في اللغة الإنجليزية تحتوي على بعض الحروف غير المنطوقة (الصامتة) تسمى Silent letters ومن أمثلة هذه الكلمات:
- لا تنطق حرف (b) إذا جاء بعده حرف (m) ← lamb
- لا تنطق حرف (g) إذا جاء بعده حرف (n) ← sign
- لا تنطق حرف (w) إذا جاء بعده حرف (r) ← write
- لا تنطق حرف (k) إذا جاء بعده حرف (n) ← know
- لا تنطق حرف (t) إذا جاء بعده حرف (l) ← castle





1 Circle the words that start with 'b' in red. Circle the words that start with 'p' in green. Then look and match:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف 'b' باللون الأحمر والكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف 'p' باللون الأخضر. ثم انظر وصل:



1- bull
2- pull
3- bear
4- pear
5- beach
6- peach
7- bee
8- pea

2 Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen and repeat:



استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي سمعتها. ثم استمع وردد:

1- bee / pea	2- bull / pull	3- bear / pear
4- beach / peach	5- bee / pea	6- bull / pull
7- bear / pear	8- beach / peach	

3 Look, read, and listen. What happens to the letters in bold in the words?

انظر واقرأ واستمع ماذا يحدث للأحرف المكتوبة بخط ثقيل في الكلمات؟





1 climb — 2 two — 3 hour

4 island — 5 knife — 6 wrist

4 Listen and write. Then read aloud:

استمع واكتب ثم اقرأ بصوت عالي :



He was 1 .... on an 2 .... with his 3 .... cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his 4 ....
But he was very lucky – he had a 5 .... so he could make a bandage and then 6 .... a message in the sand.
Two 7 .... later, people came to save him!





CLIL: MATH

Units of measurement وحدات القياس

- هناك أكثر من وحدة لقياس الطول وللقيام بذلك length نستخدم الكيلومترات (كم)، والمتر (م)، والسنتيمتر (سم)، والملليمترات (مم).

millimeter = mm	المللميتر (مم)	meter = m	المتر (م)
centimeter =cm	والسنتيمتر (سم)	kilometer = km	الكيلومتر (كم)

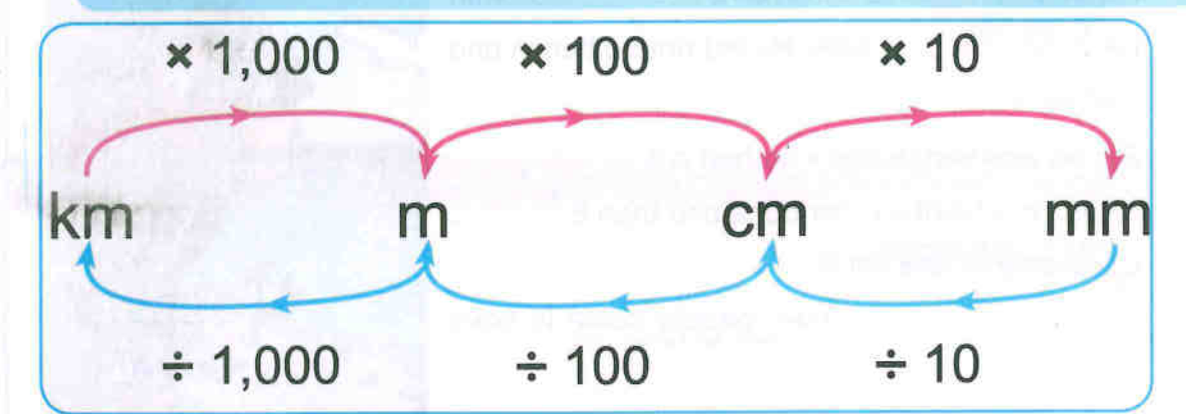
- لاحظ القياسات الآتية :

1m = 100cm = 1,000mm   1cm = 10mm

1km = 1,000m = 100,000cm = 1,000,000mm

لاحظ

١- عند التحويل من كيلومتر إلى متر نقوم بضرب العدد فى 1000
٢- عند التحويل من متر إلى سنتيمتر نقوم بضرب العدد فى 100
٣- عند التحويل من سنتيمتر إلى مليمتر نقوم بضرب العدد فى 10
٤- عند التحويل من مليمتر إلى سنتيمتر نقوم بقسمة العدد على 10
٥- عند التحويل من مليمتر إلى متر نقوم بقسمة العدد على 100
٦- عند التحويل من متر إلى كيلومتر نقوم بقسمة العدد على 1000



How long / tall / high / far is it? وللسؤال عن طول الأشياء نستخدم السؤال:

1 Think and write: فكر واكتب :

1. 32,000m = 32 km
2. 40mm = ______ cm
3. 12km = ______ m
4. 0.3cm = ______ mm
5. 1,800m = ______ km

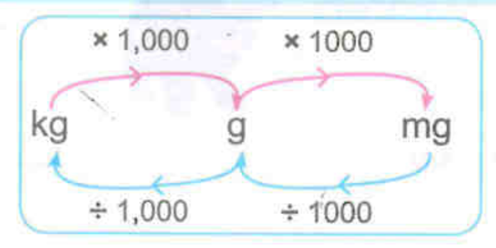
هناك أكثر من وحدة لقياس الوزن ونستخدم الكيلوجرامات (كجم)، والجرامات (جم)، والمليجرامات (مج).

milligram = mg	المليجرام (مج)	gram = g	الجرام (جم)
kilogram = km	الكيلوجرام (كجم)		

1g = 1,000mg   1kg = 1,000g = 1,000,000mg

لاحظ

١- عند التحويل من كيلوجرام إلى جرام نقوم بضرب العدد فى 1000
٢- عند التحويل من جرام إلى مليجرام نقوم بضرب العدد فى 1000
٣- عند التحويل من مليجرام إلى جرام نقوم بقسمة العدد على 1000
٤- عند التحويل من جرام إلى كيلوجرام نقوم بقسمة العدد على 1000



وللسؤال عن الوزن نقول : How much does it weigh?

ويكون الرد : It weighs 7 kilograms.

2 Think and write: فكر واكتب :

1. 7kg = 7,000 g
2. 2,000g = ______ kg
3. 3g = ______ mg
4. 5,500g = ______ kg
5. 6.5kg = ______ g

3 Work with a partner. Play tic-tac-toe. Listen to your teacher for instructions

إعمل مع زميلك العب لعبة. تك - تاك - تو . إستمع لتعليمات معلمك :

500 m = ______ km	7.3 kg = ______ g	0.8 cm = ______ mm
2,200 g = ______ kg	5 g = ______ mg	6.7 km = ______ m
30 mm = ______ cm	900 g = ______ kg	2,500 m = ______ km

- لعبة tic - tac - toe مثل لعبة x - o حيث يكمل صف أو عمود أو قطر ليكون الفائز.

Activities



1 Match: صل:

A		B
1 pull		a
2 bear		b
3 peach		c
4 bee		d
5 pea		e

2 Circle the odd one out: ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1	peach	bear	apple	pear
2	climb	write	bee	pull
3	school	island	castle	wrist
4	two	four	five	knee

3 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1- We can get honey from the ....

a bees b peas c bears

2- A .... is my favorite fruit.

a beach b peach c bull

3- In summer, I go to Alexandria to walk on the ....

a bull b beach c peach

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4- A pea is ....

a white b green c red

5- The boy fell onto the beach and hurt his ....

a wrist b island c castle

6- 1 kilogram equals .... gram.

a 100 b 1000 c 10

4 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

two - knee - climbing

The boy was ❶ .... on an island. Suddenly, he fell onto a beach and hurt his ❷ .... After ❸ .... hours, people came and saved him.

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم:

1- which city has most rain, nabil

- -

2- mariam and retaj bought a 7 kg watermelon

- -



Lessons 5&6 ★ Writing & Project



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

unsafe	غير آمن
power cut	انقطاع التيار
torch	كشاف



Other words كلمات أخرى

extreme weather	طقس قاسي	extreme heat	الحرارة الشديدة
classmates	زملاء دراسة	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
get dark	يحل الظلام	lightning	برق
frightening	مُخيف	electric wires	الأسلاك الكهربائية
black cloud	سحابة سوداء	candle	شمعة
wide	كبير	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية
bits	قطع صغيرة	closer	أقرب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
destroy	يدمر	destroyed
move	يتحرك	moved
twist	يلف	twisted
contact	يوصل	contacted
damage	يدمر / يتلف	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
stand	يقف	stood
find out	يكتشف	found out
strike	يصعق	struck
hurt	يؤذي	hurt
see	يرى	saw

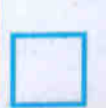
Study the following

1. I was at school with my classmates. - كنت في المدينة مع زملائي في الفصل.
2. Then it started to get dark. - ثم بدأت تظلم.
3. We could see it was moving slowly. - استطعنا أن نراها تتحرك ببطء.
4. We could see it was damaging buildings. - استطعنا أن نراها وهي تحطم المنازل.
5. There might be very strong winds. - قد تكون هناك رياح قوية جدًا.
6. There might be heavy rain and lightning. - قد يكون هناك أمطار غزيرة وبرق.
7. It might not be safe to go outside - electric wires could fall. - قد لا يكون الخروج آمن - يمكن أن تسقط الأسلاك الكهربائية.
8. There might be a power cut. - قد يكون هناك انقطاع للتيار الكهربائي.
9. People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help. - قد يحتاج الأشخاص في الشارع أو المنازل أو السيارات إلى مساعدتكم.

1 Read. What extreme weather in England is the writer describing. Check (✓) the correct photo below?

اقرأ. ما هو الطقس القاسي في إنجلترا الذي يصفه الكاتب؟ ضع علامة (✓) على الصورة الصحيحة.

I was at school with my classmates. Then it started to get dark. We went outside. Then I saw the .... and it was very frightening. It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near us, it was getting bigger and it was twisting around. We could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses! When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. We could see it was moving slowly, and we could see it was damaging buildings. The next day, we found out that the tornado hurt a lot of people, and destroyed many homes and other buildings.

 ☐  ☐  

2 **Read another account of an extreme weather event. The words in bold are wrong. Can you correct them?**

اقرأ بيانا آخرا لحدث طقس قاسي. الكلمات المكتوبة بخط ثقيل خطأ. هل يمكن أن تصححها؟

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I **loked** out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there **were** a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to **sea**. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There **was** other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see **some** more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the **son** again and drove on through the desert!

3 **Read the tips for keeping safe in extreme weather. Match them to the correct group. One tip matches both groups**

إقرأ الأرشادات للحفاظ على الأمان فى الجو القاسى. صل الأرشادات بالمجموعة الصحيحية. يمكن أن تصل نصيحة واحدة بالمجموعتين.

a Keeping safe in extreme heat: ....

b Keeping safe in a sandstorm: ....

1- Drink lots of water, even if you don't feel thirsty. اشرب الكثير من الماء حتى لو لم تشعر بالعطش.	2- Wear a scarf to protect your face. ارتدي وشاح لحماية وجهك.	3- Try to spend time in cool buildings with air-conditioning. حاول قضاء الوقت في المباني الباردة التي بها تكييف الهواء.	4- Stay inside so the sand can't get in your mouth. ابق في الداخل حتى لا يدخل الرمل في فمك.
5- Open the windows when there's a cool wind. افتح النوافذ عندما تكون الرياح باردة.	6- Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the shade. لا تخرج. إذا توجب عليك الذهاب بالخارج، ابق في الظل.	7- Eat small, light meals. تناول وجبات صغيرة وخفيفة.	8- If you're driving, try to get to the side of the road so you can stop your car. إذا كنت تقود السيارة، فحاول الوصول إلى جانب الطريق حتى تتمكن من إيقاف سيارتك.
9- If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut so no sand can get in. إذا كنت في المنزل، فتأكد من إغلاق النوافذ حتى لا تدخل الرمال.	10- Wear light, cool clothing. ارتد ملابس خفيفة وباردة.	11- Cover your head and face as much as possible. غطي رأسك ووجهك قدر الإمكان.	12- Turn off air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in. قم بإيقاف تشغيل التكييف لمنع دخول الرمال.

4 **Read and do:** اقرأ وافعل :

How to keep safe in a storm

What might happen in a storm?

- There might be very strong winds.
- There might be heavy rain and lightning.
- It might not be safe to go outside - electric wires could fall.
- There might be a power cut.
- People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help.

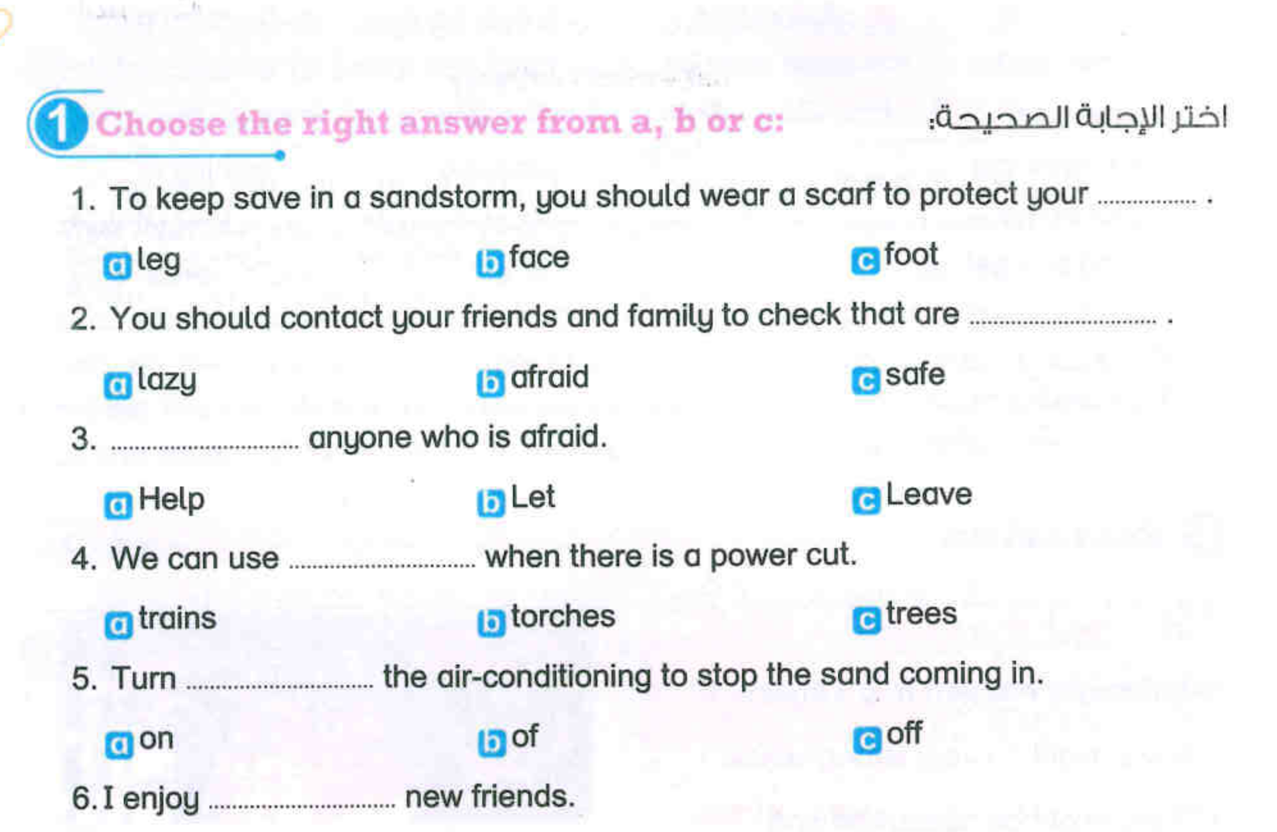




How can you protect yourself?

- Stay inside and keep dry.
- Make sure you have candles and torches - there might be a power cut.
- Contact your friends and family to check they are safe.
- Don't go anywhere by train - this could be unsafe.
- Help anyone who is afraid.
- Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes .
- Don't stand near wires – they could fall and give you an electric shock.

1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. To keep save in a sandstorm, you should wear a scarf to protect your ....
   a) leg b) face c) foot
2. You should contact your friends and family to check that are ....
   a) lazy b) afraid c) safe
3. .... anyone who is afraid.
   a) Help b) Let c) Leave
4. We can use .... when there is a power cut.
   a) trains b) torches c) trees
5. Turn .... the air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in.
   a) on b) of c) off
6. I enjoy .... new friends.
   a) reading b) making c) working
7. A vet helps .... animals to get better.
   a) good b) wild c) sick

2 Read and match: أقرا وصل:

A	B
1 I work in a team when	a. people on the street might need your help.
2 I help my mom	b. They could fall and give you an electric shock.
3 Make sure your window	c. are shut so no sand can get in.
4 Don't stand near wires.	d. in the kitchen.
5 When there is a storm	e. I'm playing football.

3 Fill in the gaps: املأ الفراغات:

cut - wind - extreme

We should take care in extreme weather. A storm is one of the (1) .... weather. There might be very strong (2) .... There might be a power (3) .... Stay at home to be safe in extreme weather.

4 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. dry - Stay - and - inside - keep.

   ----

2. might - strong - There - be - very - winds.

   ----

3. clothing - Wear - cool - light.

   ----

4. is - anyone - Help - who - afraid.

   ----

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم:

1- how can you protect yourself, salma

2- amal and adel help anyone who is afraid



Review

The weather


cloud
سحابة


cloudy
ملبد بالغيوم


rain
مطر


rainy
ممطر


wind
رياح


windy
عاصف (شديد الرياح)


sunny
مشمس


snow
جليد


ice
ثلج


rainbow
قوس قزح

Jack and the Beanstalk


tornado
إعصار


tidal wave
موجة المد والجزر


strong winds
رياح قوية


sandstorm
عاصفة رملية


heat wave
موجة حارة


flood
فيضان

Natural resources

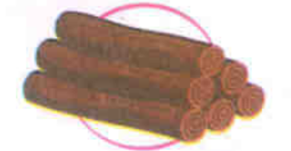

fruit
فاكهة


leather
جلد مدبوغ


silver
فضة


milk
لبن


copper
نحاس


wood
خشب


cotton
قطن


water مياه


gold ذهب


soil تربة

nature	الطبيعة
minerals	المعادن
fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري
renew	يجدد
coal	فحم
unsafe	غير آمن



tin	القصدير
lead	الرصاص
zinc	الزنك
economy	الاقتصاد
torch	كشاف

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
believe	يعتقد / يصدق	believed
call	ينادي	called
rain	تمطر	rained
stay	يبقى	stayed
destroy	يدمر	destroyed
twist	يلف	twisted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
bring	يحضر	brought
fall down	يسقط	fell down
get up	ينهض	got up
hear	يستمع	heard
feel	يشعر	felt
stand	يقف	stood
strike	يصعق	struck



Pronunciation

/p/


pull يسحب


peach خوخة


pea
حبة بازلاء (بسلة)


pear كمثرى

/ b /

bull ثور


beach شاطئ


bee نحلة


bear دب





Unit 6 What's the weather like?

Language Functions وظائف لغوية



للتنبؤ عن حالة الطقس

نستخدم:

It's going to be + حالة الطقس + المكان

- It's **going to be** hot in Egypt.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The present simple زمن المضارع البسيط

I - We - You - They - اسم جمع → (inf.)
He - She - It - اسم مفرد → (inf.) s / es / ies

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

تُستَخْدَم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار حدوث الفعل. وتأتي ظروف التكرار عادةً بعد (**verb**) وقبل الفعل الأساسي في الجملة كما يلي (**to be**):

100%	80%	70%	50%	0%
always	usually	often	sometimes	never
دائمًا	عادة	غالبًا	أحيانًا	أبدًا

- I **always go** to the club on sunny Saturdays.
- I'**m always** in bed at 11 pm.

How often? كم عدد المرات؟

تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط.

How often < do → I - you - we- they / does → he - she - it } + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

- How often do you **play** football?
- I always **play** football.

Writing Skills مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 2

The desert

climate - hot - desert - cold - night - day



1. The desert has a very special climate. It has very hot days and very cold nights. Some people who live in the desert. They try to keep cool in the day and warm at night. The desert is very interesting place.

Lesson 3

Water

water - natural - resource - drink - grow - animals



2. Water is the most important natural resource. All living things need it to stay alive. We use water to drink. We also use it to grow plants and keep animals. I drink three bottles of water every day.

Activity Unit 6

Hot summer

summer - weather - sunny - hot - Alexandria



3. We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have very hot summers. In summer we go to Alexandria. It is cool in summer in Alexandria. It's a fantastic city



AZHAR EXERCISES الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose: استمع وأختر:

1. Egypt is .... in summer. (cold - rainy - hot)
2. We cook in the .... (bathroom - kitchen - bedroom)

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words below: أقرأ وأكمل

classmates school did

A : Where did you go yesterday?
B : I was at -- .
A : What -- you do there?
B : I met my -- .

B- Reading

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: أقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, I was driving through the desert to visit my cousins. I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. It was very difficult. I closed all the windows.

1. I was .... through the desert.
   a diving b driving c swimming
2. I visited my ....
   a uncle b family c cousins
3. I closed all the ....
   a doors b boxes c windows

C- The Reader

4 Read and write (True) or (False): اقرأ وأكتب صح أم خطأ:

	True	False
1 Mr Bassam is a geologist.		
2 Mariam finds a blue gecko on a rock.		

5 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I always .... to the club on Saturday.
   a go b goes c going
2. .... air is important to keep us healthy.
   a Bad b Dirty c Clean



Activity ON UNIT 6



1 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. The Nile brings the .... from the south.
   a food b water c wind
2. It's very .... in the summer in Egypt.
   a cold b cloudy c hot
3. He sometimes .... to music.
   a listens b listening c listen
4. Don't stand near .... in a storm.
   a friends b wires c school
5. I don't .... chicken.
   a like b likes c liked

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 We need water for	a. to stop the sand coming in.
2 How often	b. the store.
3 They went to	c. plays tennis.
4 He never	d. drinking, cooking and washing.
5 Close the windows	e. do you play football?

3 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

We can use natural resources to stay alive and keep healthy. Natural resources are water, clean air, animals, forests, soil, fossil fuels, and minerals. Water is the most important of all natural resources because all living things need it to stay alive. Clean air is also important to keep us and our crops healthy.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

1. Living things need water to stay ....
   a bad b sorry c alive
2. Water is the most important natural ....
   a animal b resource c crops

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why is the clean air important? ----------------------------------

4. What are natural resources? ----------------------------------

4 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

copper - fossil - Minerals

We use natural resources every day in our lives. We get our energy from ❶ .... fuels. ❷ .... , like gold and ❸ .... , are very important. We can make things like cell phones and cars.

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. have - of - a nice - **We** - variety - weather. ----------------------------------
2. was - **It** - a very - day - hot. ----------------------------------
3. lots - **Drink** - water - of. ----------------------------------
4. can - **How** - yourself - protect - you? ----------------------------------

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

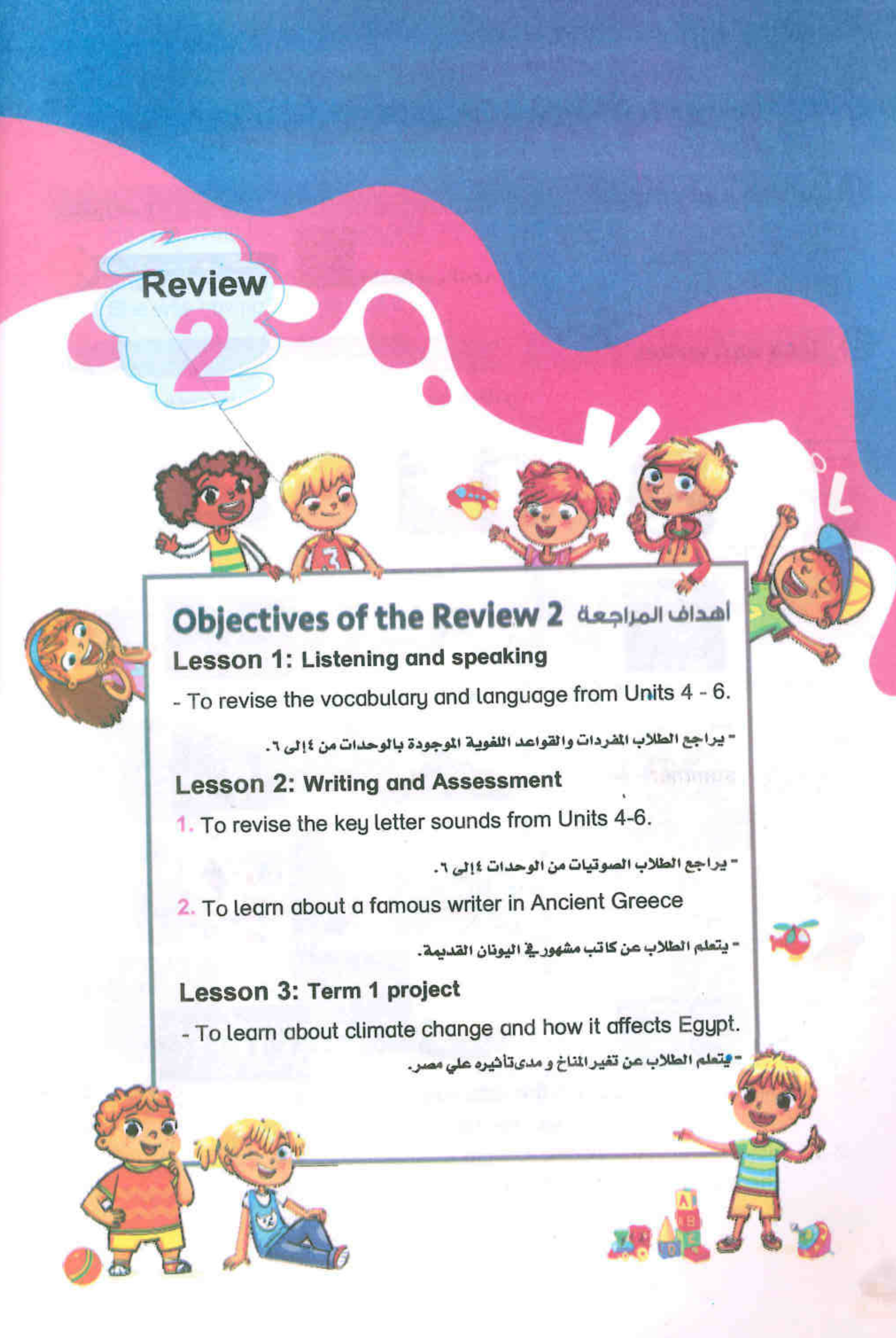
summer - weather - sunny - hot - Alexandria

----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- how can i keep safe in extreme heat

2- ali doesn t play in the street



Review 2

Objectives of the Review 2 أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع الطلاب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٤ إلى ٦.

Lesson 2: Writing and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 4-6.

- يراجع الطلاب الصوتيات من الوحدات ٤ إلى ٦.

2. To learn about a famous writer in Ancient Greece

- يتعلم الطلاب عن كاتب مشهور في اليونان القديمة.

Lesson 3: Term 1 project

- To learn about climate change and how it affects Egypt.

- يتعلم الطلاب عن تغير المناخ و مدى تأثيره علي مصر.

Lesson 1

★ Units 4 , 5 & 6

1 Listen and point:

استمع وأشر :





2 look and write:

انظر واكتب :



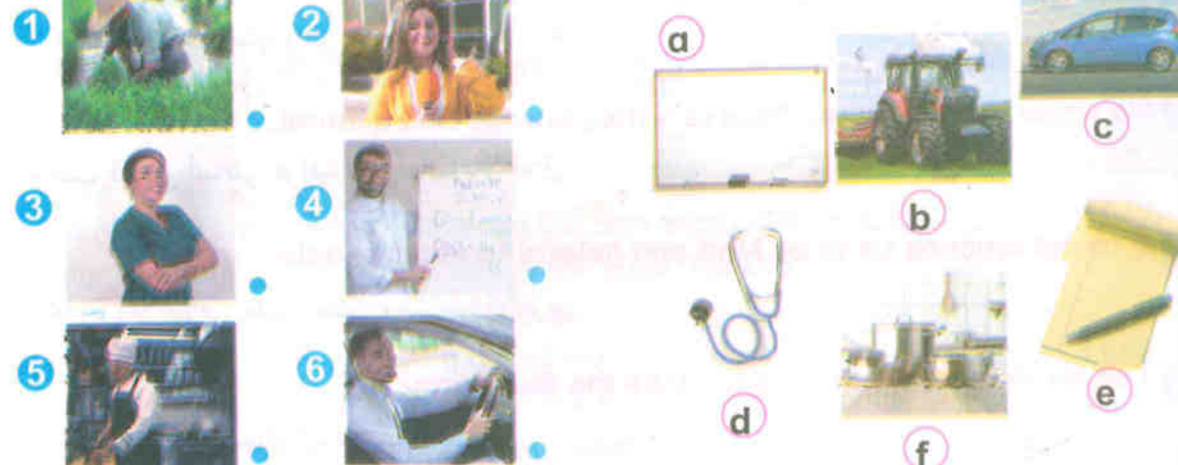
3 Check (✓) the correct past continuous sentences and correct the wrong sentences

ضع علامة (✓) أمام الجمل في زمن الماضي المستمر وصحح الجمل الخاطئة :

1. He were doing his homework with his mom yesterday. ✗
   He was doing his homework with his mom yesterday.
2. She was have breakfast at 8 am. ✗
   She was having breakfast at 8 am .
3. I was speaking English at 5 pm. ✓
   ----
4. They were makeing paper kites yesterday. ☐
   ----
5. We were swiming in the sea in the evening. ☐
   ----
6. You were talking to your friends and watching TV. ☐
   ----

4 Match the people to the tools for their jobs. Then complete the sentences with must or mustn't.

صل الأشخاص بالأدوات الخاصة بوظائفهم ، ثم اكمل الجمل باستخدام must أو mustn't



1. I ......must...... get up early to look after my animals.
2. I ......mustn't...... be unkind when I interview people.
3. I .... give time to each of my sick people.
4. I .... finish the lesson half an hour early to catch my train.
5. I .... prepare delicious food for all the guests.
6. I .... drive too fast – it's dangerous.



Lesson 2 ★ Units 4 , 5 & 6



Vocabulary

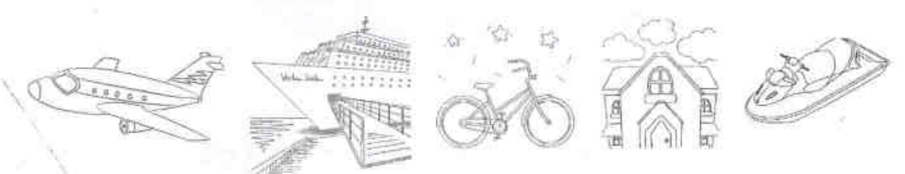
a famous writer	كاتب مشهور	path	طريق
Ancient Greece	اليونان القديمة	traveler	مسافر
moral	درس أخلاقي	shine	تسطع الشمس
(be) called	تسمي	pull tighter	يضيق الملابس
fables	أساطير خرافية	blow	ينفخ
patient	صبور	take off	يخلع

Study the following

1. **Aesop was a very famous writer in Ancient Greece.**
   - كان أيسوب كاتبًا مشهورًا في اليونان القديمة.
2. **He wrote stories called "fables"- they always had a moral.**
   - كتب قصص أساطير خرافية تتعلق دائمًا بالأخلاق.
3. **A moral teaches us to be kind and helpful to other people.**
   - الدرس الأخلاقي يعلمنا العطف ومساعدة الآخرين.
4. **The North wind was trying to make the Sun angry.**
   - حاولت الرياح الشمالية أن تغضب الشمس.
5. **He pulled his coat tighter around him.** - لقد ارتدى معطفه بإحكام حول نفسه.
6. **The North wind was angry and blew away.** - كانت الرياح الشمالية غاضبة وهبت بعيدًا.

1 **Think about eco-tourism again. Remember that eco-tourism is about being kind to the environment and local people. Color the things which eco-tourism is in yellow and the things which it isn't in red**

فكر في السياحة البيئية مرة أخرى. تذكر السياحة البيئية هي أن تكون عطوفًا على البيئة والسكان . لون الأشياء التي تخص البيئة باللون الأصفر والأشياء التي لا تخص البيئة باللون الأحمر.



استمع إلى النص

Aesop was a very famous writer in Ancient Greece. He wrote stories called 'fables' – they always had a moral. A moral teaches us to be kind and helpful to other people. An example of a moral is: Be kind and patient with people.



2 **Read and listen to one of Aesop's fables. Choose the moral a, b, or c:**

اقرأ واستمع إلى واحدة من أساطير إيسوب ثم اختر:

a Listen to the person who is against you and don't do things.
b Always wear a coat, even when it's sunny.
c Sometimes you can get people to do things by being clever, not by being strong.

استمع إلى النص

The North Wind was trying to make the Sun angry. "I'm very strong," he said, "I'm stronger than you." He looked down and blew. He knocked over some trees on a path. "I'm not so sure you're stronger than me," replied the Sun, smiling.

At that moment, a man wearing a coat walked along the road. The Sun said to the Wind, "OK, let's see. Who can make the man take off his coat?" "Hmm," the Wind said. "Of course I'm going to win." He looked down at the traveler and he blew and blew. The man felt the Wind and he felt cold. He pulled his coat tighter around him. He didn't let the Wind blow off his coat. The Wind was angry, but he was tired and stopped.

Then the Sun came out and began to shine. "Oh dear!" said the man "It's so hot!." He got so hot, he took off his coat. "That's better," he said.

The Sun looked at the North Wind and said, "I won." The North Wind was angry and blew away!

3 Read again and put the events in the story in the correct order.

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى ورتب احداث القصة بالترتيب الصحيح:

1. The North Wind is not nice to the Sun. [1]
2. The Sun wins the competition. [ ]
3. The Sun tries to make the man take his coat off. [ ]
4. The Sun suggests a competition. [ ]
5. The North Wind tries to make the man take his coat off. [ ]
6. The Sun sees a man on the path. [ ]

4 Listen and write the words you hear. Then match:

استمع واكتب الكلمات ثم صل:

Tapescript — نص الاستماع — استمع إلى النص

1- strawberry	2- throw	3- street	4- three	5- strong
6- screen	7- eye	8- town	9- boy	10- loud



a — 1- s.................................. — b

2- t..................................



c — 3- s.................................. — d

4- t..................................



e — 5- s.................................. — f

6- s..................................



g — 7- e.................................. — h

8- t..................................



i — 9- b.................................. — j

10- l..................................





TERM 1 - PROJECT 1

Vocabulary

climate change	تغير المناخ	evaporate	يتبخر
affect	يؤثر على	rise	ترتفع
glacier melting	انصهار الجليد	sea levels	مستويات البحر
drought	جفاف	less crops	محاصيل أقل
flood	فيضان	melt	ينصهر
agriculture	الزراعة	salty	مالح
save	يوفر	soil-less farming	الزراعة بدون تربة
solution	حل	specific greenhouse	صوبة زجاجية خاصة
temperature	درجة الحرارة		



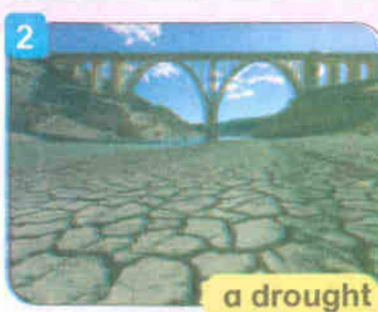
Study the following

1. Climate change is about how we are changing the weather with pollution.
- التغير المناخي هو تغير الطقس بعوامل التلوث.
2. The temperature is rising and the glaciers are melting.
- ترتفع درجة الحرارة وينصهر الجليد.
3. When the sea gets higher, we get floods.
- عندما يرتفع البحر يحدث الفيضان.
4. When the temperature rises, we get drought because the water evaporates.
- عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة يحدث الجفاف لأن الماء يتبخر.
5. Climate change might cause problems to agriculture.
-تغير المناخ يسبب مشاكل في الزراعة.
6. Crops get the right amount of water and nutrients in specific greenhouses.
- تأخذ المحاصيل كمية مناسبة من الماء في صوبات زجاجية خاصة.

Review 2

Climate change and how it affects Egypt.
What is climate change? تغير المناخ وكيفية تأثيره على مصر. ما هو تغير المناخ؟


1 This is a glacier melting


2 a drought


3 a flood

Climate change is about how we are changing the weather with pollution. The temperature is rising and the glaciers are melting. This means the sea levels are rising, too. When the sea gets higher, we get floods. When the temperature rises, we get droughts because the water evaporates.

1 Read and think about the project and make a poster. Work in groups and prepare a presentation for your class

اقرأ وفكر فى المشروع واعمل بوستر - اعمل في مجموعات وجهز عرض لفصلك.

Think about how climate change is affecting Egypt. فكر كيف تغير المناخ يوثر على مصر.

Choose one of the topics in the box below in your group.

اختر واحدة من المصطلحات الأتية في مجموعتك:

Rising temperature - Rising sea levels - Floods - Droughts - Less crops

2 Think about what caused climate change in Egypt.

فكر في اسباب تغير المناخ في مصر.

Make flow sentences like this one:

Industry making things → warmer temperature → too hot for crops → crops die.

Warmer temperature → glaciers melt → sea level rises → sea water gets into the River Nile and makes it salty → this kills the crops

----

----

3 Think about some key words you want to use for your presentation. Circle some good words in the table below:

فكر في استخدام الكلمات الأتية لتستخدمها في تقديم عرضك ، وضع دائرة حول الكلمات الجيدة في هذا الجدول.

environment	methane	table	carbon dioxide	temperature
whiteboard	greenhouse gas	cats	agriculture	drought

4 Think about some possible solutions. Look at the example.

فكر في حلول ممكنة . انظر إلى هذا المثال:

Climate change might cause problems to agriculture. There might not be enough water to grow crops. One solution to drought is to use soil-less farming. See the photo below. In this way, you grow plants without using soil.
Crops get the right amount of water and nutrients in specific greenhouses. And so you save water and time.

5 COP27 is a very important international environmental meeting. People from many countries talk about how to help the environment and stop climate change. This year it will be in Sharm El-Sheikh. Think about what you and your group want to say to COP27 about Egypt and the world

COP27 اجتماع هام جدًا للبيئة العالمية. يتحدث الكثير من الناس في الدول الأخرى عن كيفية مساعدة البيئة وتوقف تغير المناخ. فكر أنت ومجموعتك فيما تقوله إلى COP27 عن مصر والعالم.

Dear COP27
We are worried about climate change. Here in Egypt we have these problems with climate change:

My friends and I think we can help Egypt by doing this:

We think we can help the world environment by doing this:

----

on Units (4,5 & 6)

Activity



1 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A : How .... do you play karate? B : I never play it.

a old b often c long

2. Amir .... friends with other people in his community.

a grew b blew c made

3. Tourists like .... near coral reef in the Red Sea.

a diving b traveling c driving

4. Seham .... tidy up the kitchen.

a mustn't b must c shouldn't

5. My mom .... the meat with a sharp knife yesterday.

a cut b ate c bought

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Oxygen is	a. a football match by yourself.
2 You can't win	b. important for Ancient Egypt's economy.
3 My friend Hisham	c. the air polluted.
4 Fossil fuels make	d. a gas that trees release into the air.
5 Farmers were very	e. never gets up early.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

3 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

reeds - freshwater - species

The banks of the Nile River have many different ❶ .... of animals and plants like hippos and bamboo. There is lots of ❷ .... , not saltwater. Many water birds live in the ❸ .... on the river banks.

4 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص الآتي وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Nabil's father is a geologist. Last week he drove to the desert with his friend Emad to find out new rocks. After ten minutes, they looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. There was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. They closed the windows of the car but it was very dark. There were other cars on the road. They were going to hit them. Suddenly the sandstorm moved away. They saw the sun again and drove on through the desert.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

1. Nabil's father and Emad closed the .... of the car.

a windows b doors c chairs

2. Nabil's father went to the desert by ....

a bus b car c bike

B- Answer the following questions:

1. What did they see through the window?

- -

2. Why did Nabil's father go to the desert?

- -

Review 2

5 Read and reorder the following: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. exciting - is - Eco-tourism - idea - an.

----

2. driving - through - They - desert - were - the.

----

3. in - Egypt - People - worked - Ancient - hard.

----

4. teaches - A moral - to - us - be - kind.

----

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

Greenhouses

glass - plants - warm - temperature - change - grow



----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what s the matter

----

2. i must do my english homework



The Reader

Amir And His Lizard

أمير والسحلية الخاصة به



Objectives of the Reader

أهداف القصة

1. To read and understand a story. ١ - يقرأ الطالب ويفهم قصة.
2. To enjoy reading in English. ٢ - يستمتع الطالب بالقراءة باللغة الانجليزية.
3. To identify characters in a story. ٣ - يتعرف الطالب على شخصيات القصة.
4. To identify the key events and vocabulary in a story. ٤ - يتعرف الطالب على الأحداث الرئيسية والمفردات في قصة.
5. To review the story and check understanding. ٥ - يراجع الطالب القصة ويتأكد من فهمه لها.
6. To put events from a story in order. ٦ - يرتب أحداث من القصة بشكل صحيح.
7. To examine the characters in a story. ٧ - يختبر الطالب في شخصيات القصة.
8. To retell the story. ١٠ - يعيد الطالب رواية القصة.

Vocabulary



Characters of the Reader

شخصيات القصة

Amir

أمير



Mariam

مريم (أخت أمير)



Amir's mother

والدة أمير (الأم)

Amir's father

والد أمير (الأب)



Lizzy the lizard

السحلية (لِذى)



Youssef

يوسف (زميل أمير)



Hany

هانى (خبير زواحف)



Mr Bassam

السيد بسام (مدرس أمير)

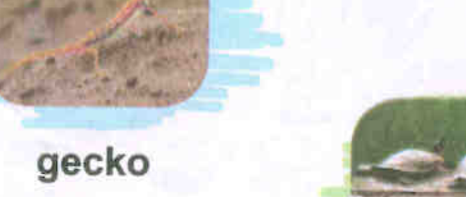


Picture Dictionary

قاموس الصور







dangerous

خطر



gecko

برص

reptiles

زواحف



rock

صخرة



hamster

الهامستر (حيوان قارض)



poster

ملصق إعلانى



rabbit

أرنب



lizard

سحلية



snake

ثعبان



tortoise

سلحفاة

The Reader
القصة

1



Amir, Mariam, Mom, and Dad are having lunch together. Mom cooked Amir's favorite dish, molokhia and chicken. But Amir isn't happy.

يتناول أمير ومريم والأم والاب الغداء معًا. طبخت الام الطبق المفضل لأمير، ملوخية ودجاج. لكن أمير ليس سعيدا.

"What's the matter, Amir? Don't you like your lunch?" asked Mom. "The food is delicious[1], thanks, Mom," replied[2] Amir. He sounded sad.

سألت الام أمير "ما الأمر يا أمير؟ الا تحب غدائك؟"

رد أمير "الطعام لذيذ، شكراً يا أمي". و لكنه بدا حزينًا.

2



"What's the matter[3], Amir?" asked Dad. "Don't you feel well?"
"I'm fine, Dad. But I didn't have a very happy day at school," replied Amir.
"Oh, no! You usually love school. What happened?"

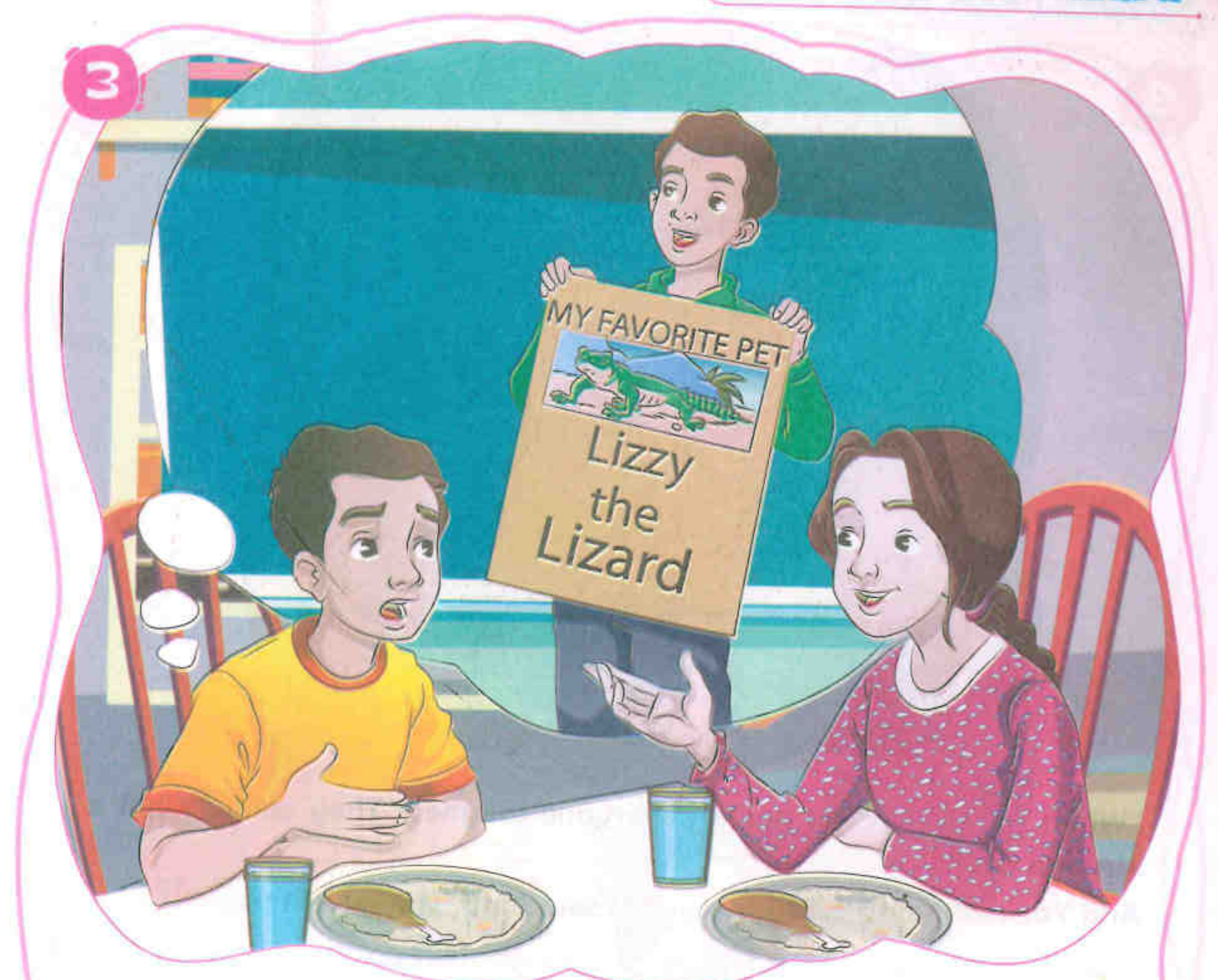
سأل الاب أمير "ما الأمر يا أمير؟". "ألا تشعر بأنك بخير؟"

فرد امير "أنا بخير يا أبي. لكنى لم أحظى بيومًا سعيدًا جدًا في المدرسة".

عاد أبي فرد الاب "اوه لا! أنت عادة تحب المدرسة. ما الذى حدث؟"

1- delicious	لذيذ	2- replied	رد / اجاب	3- matter	الأمر

3



"We showed our favorite pet posters today," explained Amir.

"But your poster was amazing!" said Mariam. "Why are you sad?"

"Well, everyone else's poster showed cats, rabbits, hamsters[1] or fish - you know, pets everyone has. And my poster was about Lizzy, my lizard."

أوضح أمير: "عرضنا ملصقاتنا المفضلة الخاصة بالحيوانات الأليفة اليوم".

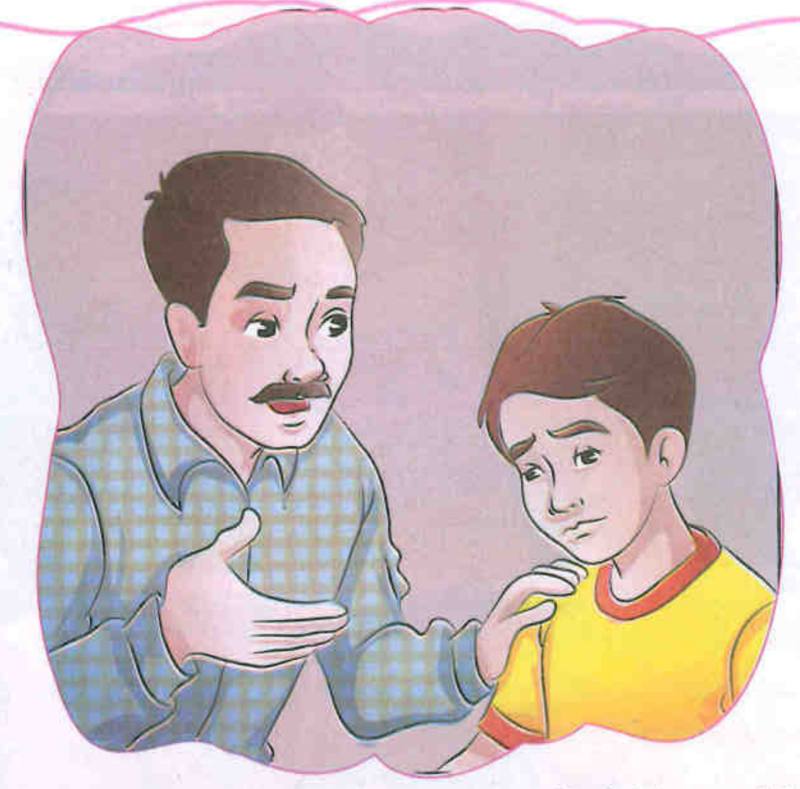
قالت مريم. "لكن الملصق الخاص بك كان مذهلاً!" "فلماذا انت حزين؟"

فرد أمير "حسنًا، اظهرت ملصقات الآخرين القطط أو الأرانب أو الهامستر(حيوان قارض) أو الأسماك - كما تعلمين هذه هي الحيوانات أليفة التى لدى الجميع. أما ملصقي فكان عن ليزي، السحلية الخاصة بي".

1- hamsters	حيوان الامستر (من القوارض)



4



"When I showed[1] my poster, everyone laughed. They said, "What a strange pet!"
And Youssef said, "Lizzy is ugly[2]!" said Amir, almost[3] in tears[4].

عندما عرضت ملصقي ، ضحك الجميع. قالوا : "يا لها من حيوان أليف غريب!" حتى أن يوسف قال: "أن ليزي قبيحة!" قال أمير ذلك و هو يكاد يبكي.

"Listen," said Dad kindly. "People sometimes say things like that when they don't know enough[5] information. The best you can do is to explain why Lizzy is such a good pet! Learn more about reptiles, and explain why they're amazing[6], not ugly!

قال أبي بلطف: "انصت إلي". " أحيانًا ما يقول الناس أشياء هكذا عندما لا يكون لديهم المعلومات الكافية. أفضل ما يمكنك فعله هو أن تشرح لماذ تعتبر ليزي حيوانا أليفا رائعًا! عليك ان تتعلم المزيد حول الزواحف ، وتشرح لماذا هى حيوانات رائعة و ليست قبيحة!"

"That's a good idea, Dad. I'll do that." Amir felt happier and started to enjoyhis molokhia.

"هذه فكرة جيدة يا أبي. سأفعل ذلك." حينئذ شعر أمير بالسعادة وبدأ يستمتع بطبق الملوخية.

1- showed	عرض / أظهر	2- ugly	قبيح	3- almost	يكاد / تقريبا
4- tears	دموع	5- enough	كافي	6- amazing	رائع

5



Later that evening, Amir looked online[1]. He found a reptile club[2] nearby. He sent an email[3] to ask if he could visit. He was very excited when he got an email saying, "Yes, you're very welcome to visit us!"

في وقت آخر من ذلك المساء ، بحث أمير على الإنترنت. فوجد نادي للزواحف في مكان قريب. فقام بارسال بريدا إليكترونيا للسؤال عما إذا كان يمكنه زيارة المكان. لقد كان متحمسا للغاية عندما تلقى رد فى بريد اليكترونى: تقول "نعم ،يمكنك زيارتنا فى أى وقت!"

1- online	على الانترنت	2- reptile	زواحف	3- email	بريد إلكترونى



6



A few days later, Dad drove Amir and Mariam to the reptile club. There, they met Hany, a reptile expert[1]. He welcomed them and explained that he is a type of scientist called a herpetologist[2].

بعد أيام قليلة ، قام الاب بالقيادة إلى نادي الزواحف مصطحبا معه أمير ومريم. و هناك قابلوا هاني وهو خبير بالزواحف. قام بالترحيب بهم وأوضح أنه عالم فى الزواحف يطلق عليه لقب أخصائي الزواحف.

"Like you, Amir, I was interested in reptiles, and now it's my job!"

واضاف هانى "كنت مثلك يا أمير ، مهتمًا بالزواحف ، والآن تلك هى وظيفتي!"

Amir smiled. "Oh, I didn't know that someone who works with reptiles is called a herpetologist. What a cool[3] job!" he said.

ابتسم أمير قائلا "اوه ، لم أكن أعرف أن الشخص الذي يعمل مع الزواحف يسمى أخصائي الزواحف. يا لها من وظيفه رائعة !"

1- expert	خبير	2- herpetologist	أخصائي الزواحف	3- cool	رائع

7



Hany showed Amir and Mariam lots of different reptiles – snakes, lizards, geckos[1], and tortoises.

"It's important to look after them well, isn't it?" asked Mariam. "I like the tortoises. Do they live a long time?"

قام هاني بعرض الكثير من الزواحف المختلفة لأمير ومريم ثعابين وسحالي وأبراص وسلاحف. "من المهم الاعتناء بهم جيدًا ، أليس كذلك؟" و اضافت، "أنا أحب السلاحف. فهل يعيشون فترة طويلة من العمر؟"

"Yes," replied Hany. "And be careful. You should read and learn about them. All reptiles are an important part of the food chain, too. Tortoises[2] can live to be 100 years old! Can you come with me on a field trip tomorrow?"

اجابها هاني: "نعم". و لكن عليك أن تكوني حريصة. يجب أن تقرأى وتتعلمي المزيد عنها. فكل الزواحف تعتبر جزءا مهما من السلسلة الغذائية. يمكن للسحلاف أن تعيش حتى تبلغ ١٠٠ عام! و سأل هانى "هل يمكنك كما أن تاتيا معي في رحلة ميدانية غدًا؟ "

Amir and Mariam looked at Dad. "Of course!" Dad was excited too!

نظر أمير ومريم إلى أبيهما. وكان الأب متحمسا وقال "بالطبع!"

1- geckos	أبراص	2- tortoises	سلاحف



8



Early the next morning, Dad, Mariam, and Amir met Hany at the club.

"It's important to have the right tools[1]," Hany explained.

و في صباح اليوم التالي فى وقت مبكر ، تقابل الاب ومريم وأمير مع هاني في النادي. فأوضح هاني قائلا، "من المهم أن يكون لديك الأدوات المناسبة".

"I love reptiles, but I know some can be dangerous[2]. But you're safe with me!

Ready? Let's go!"

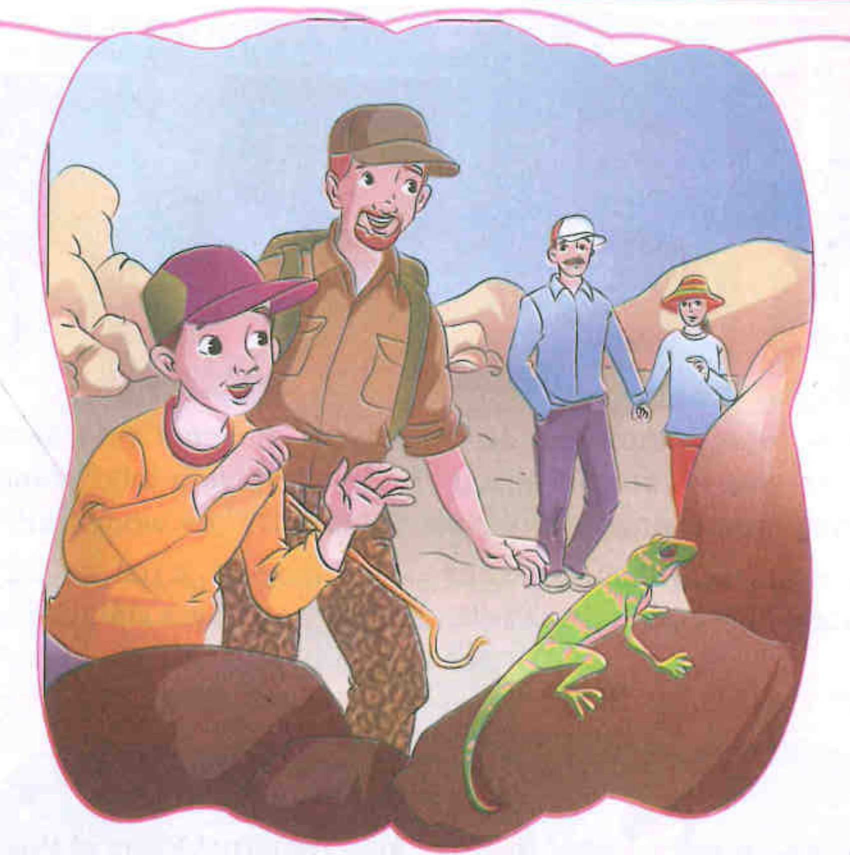
"أنا أحب الزواحف ، لكنني أعلم أن بعضها يمكن أن يكون خطيرًا. لكنك بأمان معي! هل انتم مستعدون؟ هيا بنا !"

Soon, Hany, Dad, Mariam, and Amir left for a very special[3] desert, which was not far from Cairo.

و بسرعة توجه كل من هاني والأب ومريم وأمير إلى صحراء شديدة الخصوصية والتى لم تكن بعيدة عن القاهرة.

1- tools	ادوات	2- dangerous	خطير	3- special	خاص / مميز

9



When they arrived, they spent some time looking around. Hany showed them the best places to look. Suddenly[1], Amir found a gecko on a rock[2]!

عندما وصلوا ، أمضوا بعض الوقت في تفقد المكان حولهم. فأوضح لهم هاني فبين لهم أفضل الأماكن المخصصة للبحث. و فجأة وجد أمير برص على أحد الصخور!

"Look!' he said. "What an amazing blue color! I thought all geckos were brown!"

"No, they can be different colors. Some of them can even change color!" said Hany.

فقال أمير: "انظر!" "يا له من لون أزرق مذهل! كنت اعتقد أن كل الأبراص ذات لونا بنيا!"

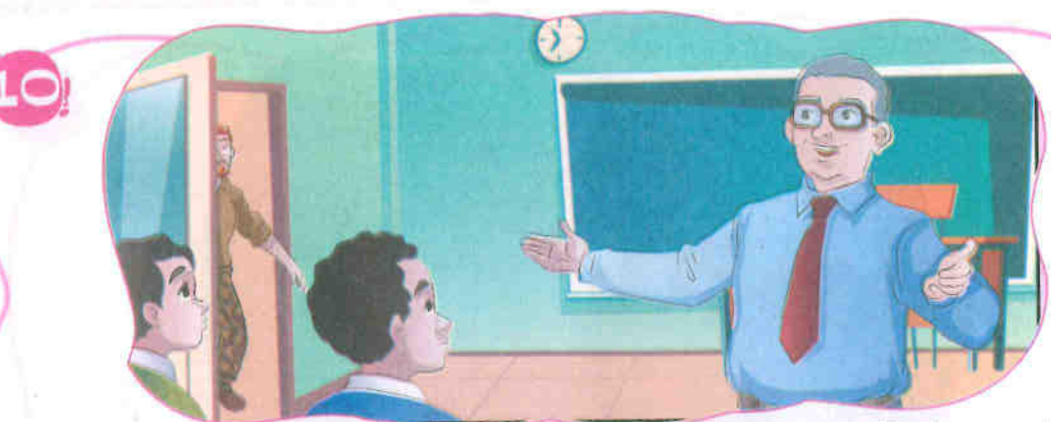
رد عليه هانى قائلا: "لا ، الابراص يمكن أن تكون بألوان مختلفة. يسهل لبعضهم أن يغيرلونه!"

Amir was very happy.

هنا كان أمير سعيدا جدا.

1- Suddenly	فجأة	2- rock	صخرة

10



Two weeks later, Amir was at school. Mr Bassam had something important to say: "A special **guest**[1] is here to give a talk!" Amir loved **talks**[2]. They were always interesting. "Who is it?" he **wondered**[3].

بعد أسبوعين كان أمير في المدرسة. كان لدى السيد بسام شيئًا مهما ليقوله: "لدينا اليوم ضيفا مميزًا هنا لإلقاء حديث!" و كان أمير يحب تلك المحادثات. حيث كانت دائما شيق. فتساءل السيد بسام متعجبا "من يكون هذا الضيف؟".

11



It was a big **surprise**[4] when Hany walked in! He talked to the boys about his job and protecting the **environment**[5]. He brought some reptiles for the boys to hold.

كانت مفاجأة كبيرة عندما دخل هاني إلي المكان! فتحدث إلى الأولاد عن وظيفته وعن حماية البيئة. وأحضر معه بعض الزواحف للاولاد كي يحملوها بأنفسهم.

Of course, he chose Amir to be his helper! All the boys, even Youssef, thought it was really cool.

و بالطبع قام هانى بأختيار أمير كى يكون مساعدا له! كل الأولاد وحتى يوسف أعجبوا بهذا الأمر كثيرا.

1- guest	ضيف	2- talks	احاديث / خطبة	3- wondered	تساءل/ تعجب
4- surprise	مفاجأة	5- environment	البيئة		

12



After the lesson[1], Youssef spoke to Amir. "I'm sorry, Amir," he said. "Lizzy isn't ugly. I really enjoyed Hany's talk. And now I think reptiles are amazing!"

بعد انتهاء الدرس تحدث يوسف إلى أمير قائلا: "أنا آسف يا أمير". "السلحية ليزي ليست قبيحة. "لقد استمتعت حقًا بالحديث الذى اجراه هاني. والآن أعتقد أن الزواحف مذهلة!"

"That's OK," said Amir. "Oh, I know: why don't you come to my house? You can see Lizzy. You can[2] it, too!"

قال أمير: "لا عليك". "أوه. أعلم لما لا تأتي إلى منزلي؟ تستطيع ان ترى ليزي. و تقوم بإطعامها أيضًا!"

"Awesome! Yes, please!" replied Youssef. "Thank you, Amir!"

أجاب يوسف : "هذا أمر رائع! نعم من فضلك!". "شكرا لك يا أميرا!"

The two boys were friends again[3].

و هكذا اصبح الولدان صديقين مرة أخرى.

1- lesson	درس	2- foes	يطعم	3- again	مرة أخرى

Story Activity



1 Look and write: انظر واكتب (كالمثال):

Amir - Dad - Hany - Mariam - Mom - Mr Bassam - Youssef - Lizzy

1 Mr Bassam

2  ....

3  ....

4  ....

5  ....

6 ....

7  ....

8  ....

2 Read and write T (true) or F (false): انظر واكتب صح أم خطأ:

1. Amir doesn't like Mom's molokhia. (F)
2. Amir's poster is about his pet lizard. (   )
3. Amir sends a letter to the reptile club. (   )
4. Hany is a geologist. (   )
5. Hany says that all reptiles are dangerous. (   )
6. Mariam finds a blue gecko on a rock. (   )
7. Hany gives a talk at Amir's school. (   )
8. Amir invites Youssef to feed Lizzy. (   )

3 Look, find, and write اقرأ وأوجد واكتب:

1  cat

2  ....

3  ....

4  ....

5  ....

6  ....

7  ....

8  ....

c	a	r	e	l	i	b	s	n	a	k	e
e	g	e	c	k	o	t	v	h	o	n	t
l	i	z	f	c	a	t	i	a	n	d	m
g	e	l	i	t	o	m	a	m	e	i	o
r	o	i	m	v	i	e	z	s	u	x	f
a	s	z	r	a	b	i	a	t	o	k	i
b	n	a	b	o	t	a	n	e	k	e	s
b	a	r	w	a	c	a	n	r	c	w	h
i	k	d	f	i	s	s	h	m	o	j	y
t	i	e	d	t	o	r	t	o	i	s	e

4 Read and write. Use words from the story:

اقرأ واكتب. استخدام كلمات من القصة:

Across

2. Youssef called Lizzy ....
4. A gecko is a type of ....
6. Hany, Amir, Mariam, and Dad went on a field ....
8. You must be careful because some reptiles are ....

Down

1. Hany asked Amir to be his .... in the classroom.
3. A herpetologist is a type of ....
5. At school, Amir made a .... about Lizzy.
7. Amir found the gecko on a ....

1

2 u g l y

3

4 5

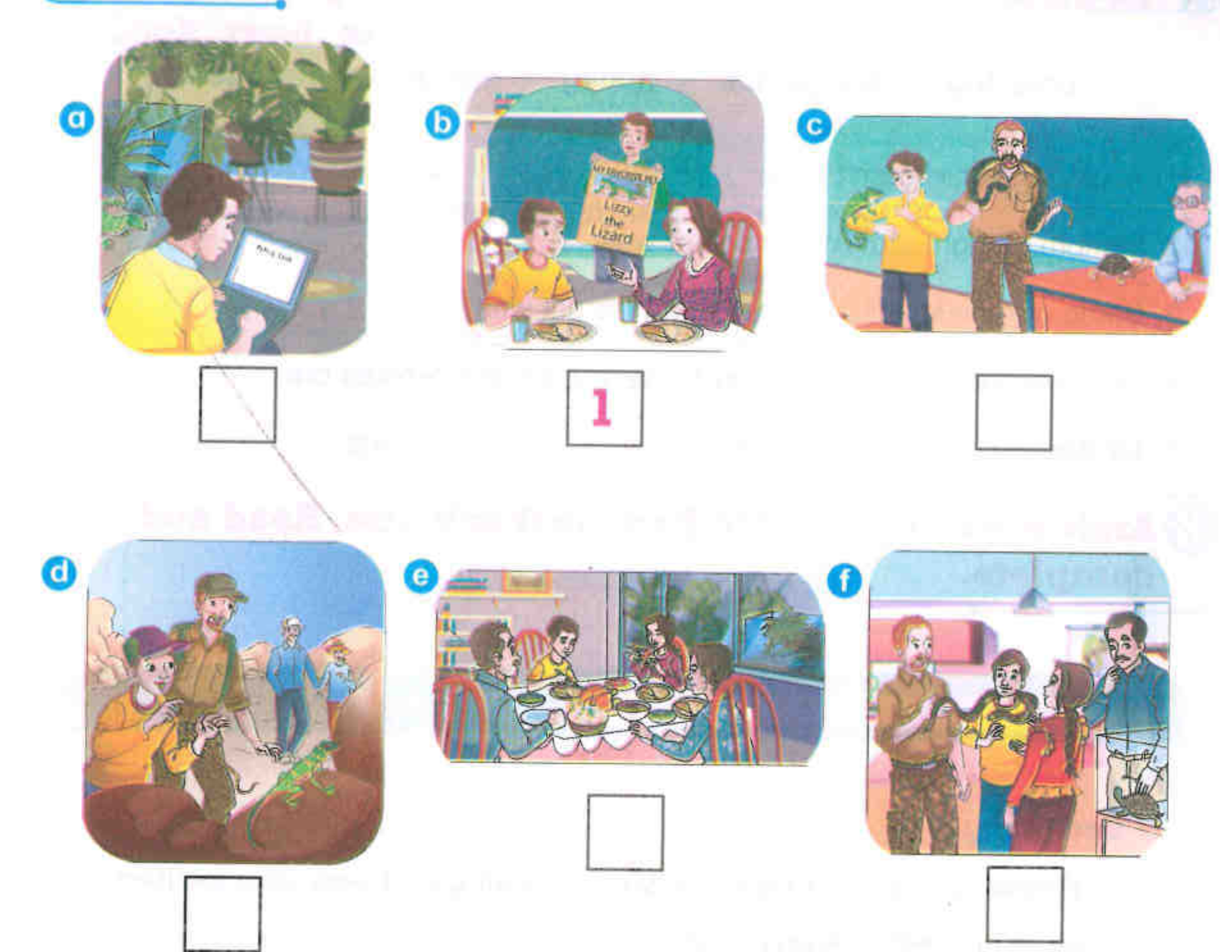
6

7

8

5 Put the pictures in the correct order:

ضع الصور فى الترتيب الصحيح:



a [ ] b [1] c [ ]

d [ ] e [ ] f [ ]

6 Read and match

اقرأ وأكمل:

1. Mr Bassam is
2. Hany is
3. Youssef called
4. Amir found
5. Hany invited
6. Hany chose

a. Amir's lizard ugly.
b. Amir and Mariam on a field trip.
c. Amir to be his helper.
d. Amir's teacher.
e. a reptile club online.
f. a herpetologist.

7 Read and match
اقرأ وأكمل:

amazing - dangerous - happy - special - strange

1. At dinner, Amir wasn't very happy
2. Mariam thought that Amir's poster was ....
3. Some of Amir's classmates thought his pet was ....
4. Hany reminded Amir to be careful because some reptiles are ....
5. Mr Bassam introduced Hany as a .... guest.

8 Amir wrote an email to Hany to thank him. Read and complete.

Dear Hany,

Thank you very much for letting me visit you. I was very excited to meet you and the reptiles!

I found.

I didn't know that

I really enjoyed

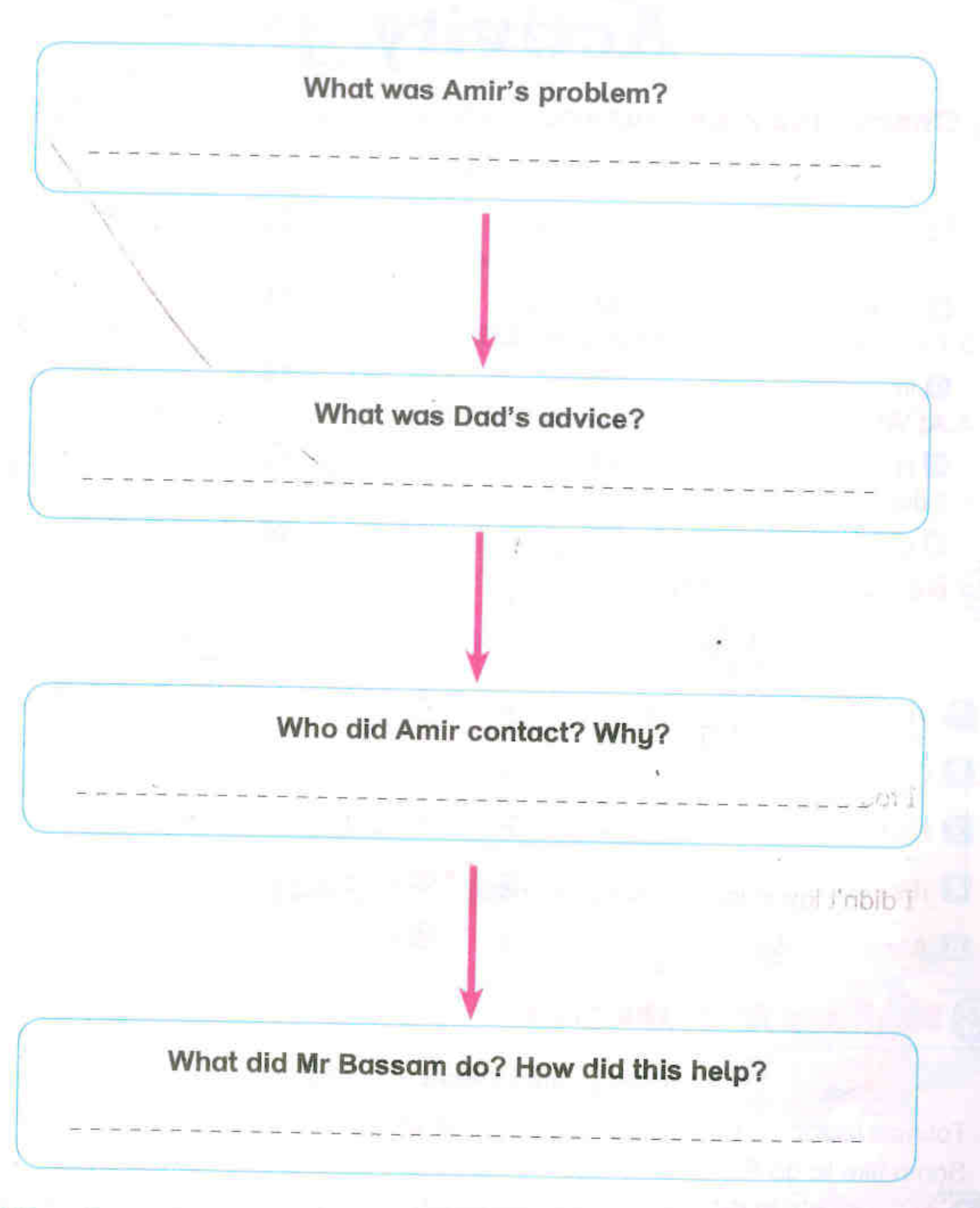
Mariam liked

It was fun in the desert near Cairo because

I hope I can do a job like yours!

Hany

9 Amir had a problem. What was it? How did he solve it? Look, read, and write.



10 What happened at the end? What made Youssef change his mind?:

General Activities

تدريبات شاملة على منهج الفصل الدراسى الأول

Activity 1

1 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Farida's favorite .... is chocolate.
   a lesson b sport c food
2. There are lots of coral .... in the Red Sea.
   a reefs b leaves c loaves
3. I'm bad .... playing handball.
   a in b for c at
4. A: What .... you like to eat? B: I'd like koshari, please.
   a is b would c were
5. I didn't .... to school yesterday.
   a go b went c goes

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Ashraf is a dentist, he looks after	a. dry in the desert.
2 I bought sunglasses	b. in Cairo.
3 He lives	c. people's teeth.
4 It's very hot and	d. to get good grades.
5 Ahmed studies hard	e. to wear on holiday.

3 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

diving - monuments - museums

Tourists like to visit Egypt. Some like to see ❶ .... in temples and ❷ .... Some like to go ❸ .... in the Red Sea.

4 Read the following and answer the questions: اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My uncle Samy takes his family to the park every Friday. There, he plays with his children. They play football. The mother makes a lot of sandwiches. They have lunch and eat ice cream. In the park, they can see birds flying and lots of flowers and trees.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

1. Uncle Samy plays with his .... in the park.
   a children b brothers c friends
2. The mother makes ....
   a cakes b sandwiches c ice cream

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Uncle Samy take his family every Friday?

----

4. What can they see in the park?

----

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. sport - favorite - My - football - is

----

2. about - buying - How - grapes - some?

----

3. pack - blue - I'll - sweater - my.

----

4. live - you - Do - a city - in?

----

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

Healthy and unhealthy food

food - healthy - chocolate - unhealthy - fruit

----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- no he didn't

2- does samir go to school on Monday



Activity 2

1 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. I .... do my homework .
   - a mustn't
   - b shouldn't
   - c must
2. Fayoum has .... and amazing sights.
   - a floods
   - b lakes
   - c storms
3. I would like.............................. apples, please.
   - a an
   - b a
   - c some
4. This .... has few ingredients.
   - a recipe
   - b country
   - c suitcase
5. I .... sleeping at 6 am yesterday.
   - a is
   - b was
   - c are

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A giant is	a. to cut something down.
2 "Non-living" means	b. the way water moves.
3 "Flow" is	c. a small area of water with rocks.
4 "Rockpool" is	d. something that isn't alive.
5 "Chop" means	e. a very, very big person.

3 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

desert - lots - camels

I went to Alexandria Library last summer. There were ❶ .... of useful books. I enjoyed reading books about ❷ .... They live in the ❸ ....

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Nesreen had some old clothes, so she went shopping with her friend Omnia. At the shop, she found nice new dresses but they were very expensive, so they went back home. Nesreen was very surprised that her mother bought the dresses she wanted.

A- Fill in the blanks with T (True) or F (False):

1. Nesreen bought the dresses. ....
2. The dresses were very expensive. ....

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Nesreen go? ....
4. Who went shopping with Nesreen? ....

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. were - What - doing - at - you - home - yesterday?
....
2. I - need - Will - a coat?
....
3. cars - are - emissions - There - too many - from.
....
4. can't - homework - I - my - do.
....

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

Your breakfast

8 o'clock - ful medames - bread - boiled eggs - fresh juice

....
....
....
....
....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- what were ahmed and Fatma doing
....
2- adel and magdy are tall
....

Activity 3

1 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Ali .... the flowers in the garden.
   a watered b drank c ate
2. I'm good at .... tennis.
   a doing b playing c making
3. Taha is a good .... He makes good shoes.
   a player b dentist c shoemaker
4. Are there .... tomatoes in the fridge?
   a some b any c not
5. People in .... Egypt worked very hard.
   a Ancient b New c Expensive

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل



A	B
1 Samir is a very	a. and toxic.
2 We went to the park	b. to buy some vegetables.
3 The air is black	c. kind person.
4 I'd like some	d. juice, please.
5 She went to the market	e. to play with our friends.

3 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

racket - practices - prizes

My friend Amr is a tennis player. He (1) .... tennis in the club. He plays with his friends. He wins a lot of (2) .... My friend Amr is good at hitting the tennis ball with his (3) ....

4 Read the following and answer the questions: اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The climate changes all the time. It becomes much hotter than before. In cities, factories and transportation don't help much as they produce too many gases. We need to save our world before it gets worse. We should plant more trees and keep our planet clean.

A- : Fill in the blanks with T (True) or F (False)

1. The climate doesn't change.
2. Cities are not healthy to live in.

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What do factories in cities produce?
----
4. How can we help our planet?
----

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. won - **Hedaya** - gold - the - medal.
----
2. teacher - uses - **My** - pen - a green.
----
3. problem, - 's - the - **What** - Tamer?
----
4. would - you - **What** - like - drink - to?
----

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

A vet

father - vet - sick - animals - help

----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- where was nabil going

2- ali wasn t watching a film

Activity 4

1 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Tertiary .... eat larger animals.
   a producers　b consumers　c tourists
2. I .... sleeping in my bedroom at 10 pm yesterday.
   a is　b am　c was
3. Monkeys are good at .... trees.
   a playing　b climbing　c cooking
4. Omar is clever. He .... does his homework.
   a always　b never　c not
5. The soil near the Nile is ....
   a hot　b cold　c fertile

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل

A	B
1 A castle is	a. a box in which we keep animals.
2 A greenhouse is	b. a bad dream.
3 "Fertile" means	c. a very large building built a long time ago.
4 A nightmare is	d. good land to grow plants and crops.
5 A cage is	e. a glass building used for growing plants.

3 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات

beans - healthy - foods

Magdy wants to be in good health. He eats different kinds of ❶ .... He sometimes has❷ .... for breakfast. He likes to have ❸ .... food all the time.

4 Read the following and answer the questions: اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Egypt is one of the world's best countries. It has many ancient monuments. The best tourist sites in Egypt are in Abu Simbel near Aswan. You can also visit the Great Temple of Ramses II, Elephantine Island, and the Island of Philae. The Great Pyramid and Sphinx at Giza are very amazing monuments to see. Tourists like to visit Egypt in winter because the weather is warm and nice.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

1. The Great Pyramid and Sphinx are at ....
   a Aswan　b Cairo　c Giza
2. You can visit the .... in Aswan.
   a Island of Philae　b The Great Pyramid　c Sphinx

B- Answer the following questions:

1. Where is Abu Simbel?
   ----
2. Why do tourists like to visit Egypt in winter?
   ----

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات

1. favorite - My - fruit - mango - is.
   ----
2. do - you - know - What - want - to?
   ----
3. about - visiting - museum - the - How ?
   ----
4. you - Would - stay - like to - hotel - this - in?
   ----

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

Holidays

Alexandria - weather - hot - playing - swim

----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- what s the weather like today

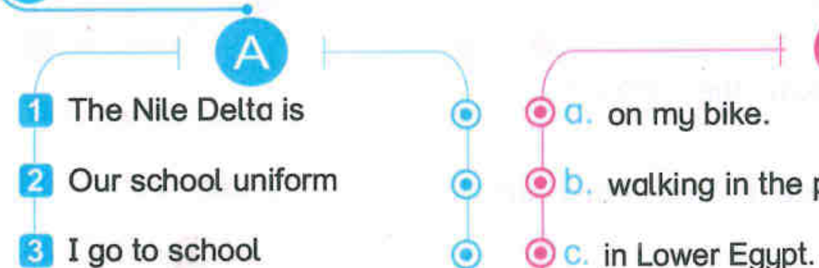
2- i never go to school on friday

Activity 5

1 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. I would like .... orange, please.
   - a an
   - b a
   - c some
2. The Red Sea .... on Egypt's east coast.
   - a dies
   - b lies
   - c arrives
3. A tourist was .... in the Red Sea near the coral reefs.
   - a sleeping
   - b cooking
   - c diving
4. We use .... to grow vegetables.
   - a soil
   - b mountain
   - c lake
5. What are the results of climate .... ?
   - a check
   - b change
   - c farming

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل



A	B
1 The Nile Delta is	a. on my bike.
2 Our school uniform	b. walking in the park?
3 I go to school	c. in Lower Egypt.
4 The food	d. is really smart.
5 How about	e. is delicious.



3 Read and fill in the gaps: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات:

sunny - trip - sunglasses

Last month, we visited Alexandria. The ❶ .... was very nice. I took my ❷ .... with me. The weather was ❸ .... and lovely.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Hoda and Mona are sisters. They are the same age. They go to primary school. They are in grade five. Hoda is tall and healthy. She eats healthy food and she never drinks cola, but Mona likes pizza and chocolate. She also eats lots of sweets. She always goes to the dentist.

A- Fill in the blanks with T (True) or F (False):

1. Hoda is older than Mona. ______
2. Hoda doesn't drink cola. ______

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why does Mona go to the dentist?
   ....
4. What kind of food does Hoda eat?
   ....

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. the - Cut - basbousa - eat - and - it.
   ....
2. shoemaker - works - The - hard.
   ....
3. sport - good at - What - are - you?
   ....
4. were - doing - What - you?
   ....

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

Your new galabeya

father - bought - galabeya - white - cotton

....
....
....
....
....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- what was ezz doing in the park
....
2- mustafa s father is a doctor
....

Al Azhar Activity 6

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose: استمع واختر:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Youssef is .... years old.
   a ten b eleven c twelve
2. His father is a ....
   a doctor b vet c teacher

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل:

father - with - Alexandria

A : Where are you going?
B : I'm going to -- .
A : Who is going -- you?
B : My -- .

C- Reading

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

We have a nice weather in Egypt. It's hot in summer, and the temperature sometimes goes to 40 degrees in some places. In winter, the weather is cold and sometimes warm.

Choose the correct answer:

1. We have .... weather in Egypt. (bad - nice - worse)
2. The summer in Egypt is .... (cold - warm - hot)
3. The temperature sometimes goes to .... degrees. (40 - 30 - 50)

D- The Reader

4 Read and write (True) or (False): اقرأ وأكتب صح أم خطأ:

	True	False
1 Hany says that all reptiles are dangerous.		
2 Mariam finds a blue gecko on a rock.		

E- Usage

5 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. I go to the park to .... football.
   a playing b play c plays
2. The Elephantine Island is in ....
   a Cairo b Alexandria c Aswan

Al Azhar Activity 7

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose: استمع واختر:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. The Nile Delta is in Lower ....
   a England b Egypt c Libya
2. The summer is very ....
   a cold b warm c hot

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل:

home - do - sunny

A : What was the weather like last Friday?
B : It was hot and -- .
A : What did you -- ?
B : I stayed at -- .

C- Reading

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I went to Alexandria Library last summer. There were lots of useful books. I enjoyed reading books about camels. Camels live in the desert. They are strong. Camels have big eyes.

Choose the correct answer:

1. I went to Alexandria Library last .... (winter - summer - spring)
2. I enjoyed reading books about .... (dogs - horses - camels)
3. Camels have big .... (ears - hair - eyes)

D- The Reader

4 Read and write (True) or (False): اقرأ وأكتب صح أم خطأ:

	True	False
1 Hany gave a talk at Amir's school.		
2 Amir invited Youssef to feed Lizzy.		

E- Usage

5 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

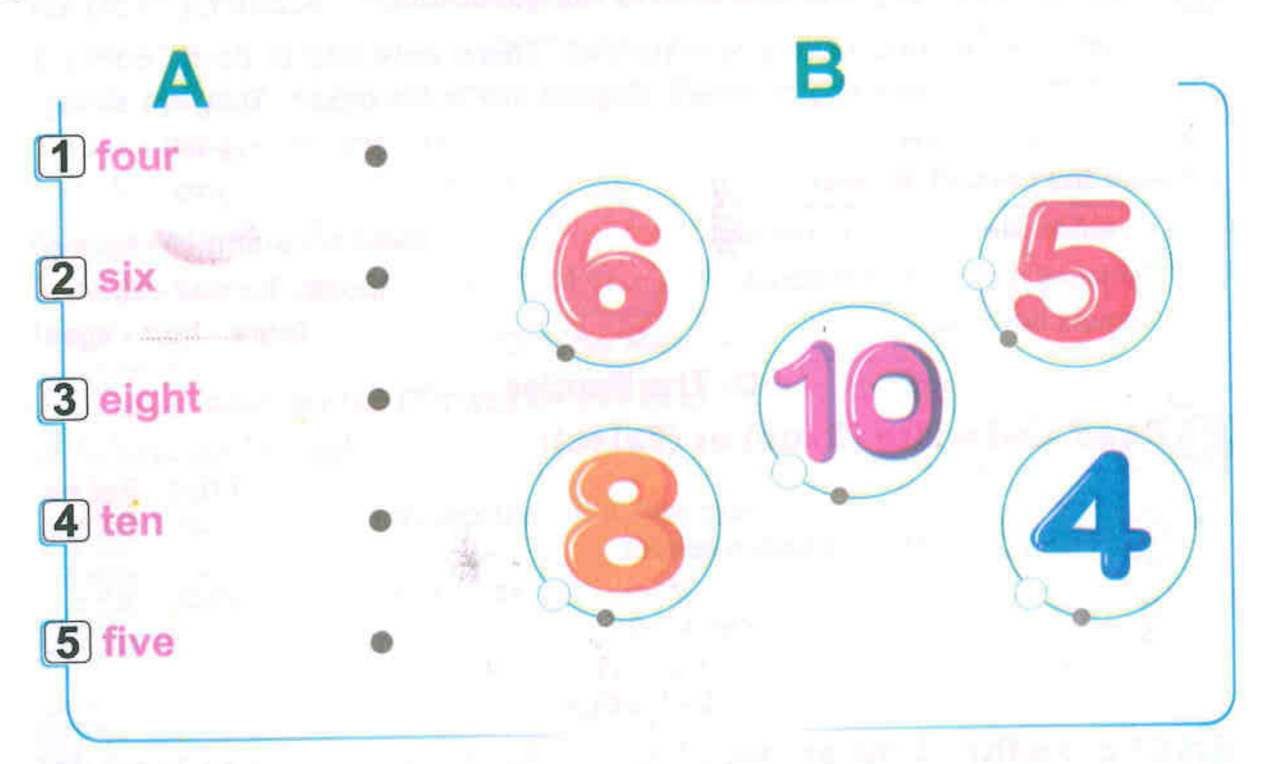
1. We make .... from trees.
   a stars b furniture c gold
2. I never .... to school on Friday.
   a go b goes c going



1 Match the words with pictures:

A	B
1 vet	a
2 strawberry	b
3 karate	c
4 bat	d
5 robot	e

1 Match the words with pictures:

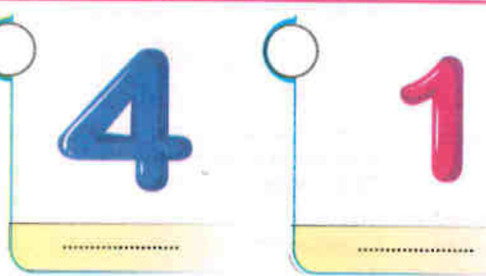


A	B
1 four	6
2 six	5
3 eight	10
4 ten	8
5 five	4

2 Look at the pictures and put (✓) or (×):

1. I like koshari.  ☐
2. He is wearing a galabeya.  ☐
3. My father is a doctor.  ☐
4. It is a hippo.  ☐

3 Put the numbers in the correct order:





4 .... 1 .... 2 .... 3 ....

4 Supply the missing letters:






1. l __ zard
2. f __ rmer
3. sp __ der
4. chickp __ as

Listening Material



نصوص الاستماع الواردة فى الكتاب

LET'S REMEMBER

Narrator : **Let's remember, Lesson 1 Exercise 2. Complete the table with the words in Exercise 1. Then listen, check, and say**

Speaker : **Social media**

cell phone password
do research text message

Transportation

metro boat taxi tram

Environment

pollution drought traffic flood



Unit 1

LESSON 2

Narrator : **Unit 1, Lesson 2, Exercise 4. Listen and circle the correct words**

Speaker : This is called a 'food chain'. It shows how plants and animals get their energy. At the start of the chain, we can see plants. These are called producers. They get energy from the sun. Animals do not get their energy from the sun. Animals eat plants or other animals for energy.



LESSON 1

Narrator : **Unit 1, Lesson 4, Exercise 1. Listen and check. Then listen and repeat**

Narrator : 1
Speaker : cake
Narrator : 2
Speaker : lime
Narrator : 3
Speaker : bean
Narrator : 4
Speaker : grape
Narrator : 5
Speaker : egg
Narrator : 6
Speaker : milk
Narrator : 7
Speaker : rice
Narrator : 8
Speaker : candy

Narrator : **Unit 1, Lesson 4, Exercise 3. Read. Then listen and complete**

Narrator : 1
Speaker : I say, "Let's play!'
Narrator : 2
Speaker : Let's bake a cake
Narrator : 3
Speaker : Snails have tails.



Unit 2




LESSON 2

Narrator : **Unit 2, Lesson 2, Exercise 4. Look and listen. Match the people to what they are good or bad at. Write D (Dalia), A (Aser) or S (Salma)**

Dalia : Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball. Aser is my brother. He's good at playing tennis and he's bad at helping me in the kitchen!
My sister's name is Salma. She's good at doing math. She's bad at tidying her room!

Narrator : **Unit 2, Lesson 3, Exercise 1. Complete with the words in the box. Then listen and check**

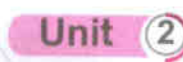
Narrator : 1
Speaker : football pitch
Narrator : 2
Speaker : karate suit
Narrator : 3
Speaker : tennis court
Narrator : 4
Speaker : swimming pool
Narrator : 5
Speaker : football boots
Narrator : 6
Speaker : tennis ball
Narrator : 7
Speaker : squash rackets
Narrator : 8
Speaker : swimming goggles

LESSON 3

Narrator : **Unit 2, Lesson 3, Exercise 3. Listen and say. Then listen and write**

Narrator : 1
Speaker : neck
Narrator : 2
Speaker : cat
Narrator : 3
Speaker : sock
Narrator : 4
Speaker : doll
Narrator : 5
Speaker : fish
Narrator : 6
Speaker : sun

words. Then listen and say

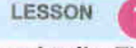


Unit 2

LESSON 4

Listen and check (✓) the words with long vowel sounds

cry-full-make-cone-cube-feet

Unit 4

LESSON 1

Narrator : **Listen and write. Then listen and repeat**

Speaker : The king sat on his throne eating strawberries on a string. He was scratching his throat. He heard a scream. A strong man came to help.



Unit 6

Write the words in the box in the correct place. Listen and check:
usually- often-sometimes

Narrator : **Unit 6, Lesson 4, Exercise 6. Listen and write. Then read aloud**

Speaker : He was climbing on an island with his two cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his wrist. But he was very lucky – he had a knife, so he could make a bandage and write a message in the sand. Two hours later, people came to save him!

Review 2

LESSON 1



Narrator : **Review 2, Lesson 1, Exercise 1. Listen and point**

Narrator : 1
Speaker : waterfall
Narrator : 2
Speaker : reporter
Narrator : 3
Speaker : sneakers
Narrator : 4
Speaker : lake
Narrator : 5
Speaker : rainbow
Narrator : 6
Speaker : cloudy
Narrator : 7
Speaker : dentist
Narrator : 8
Speaker : mountain
Narrator : 9
Speaker : snow
Narrator : 10
Speaker : scientist
Narrator : 11
Speaker : island
Narrator : 12
Speaker : ice
Narrator : 13
Speaker : river
Narrator : 14
Speaker : grasshopper
Narrator : 15
Speaker : forest

الأزهر الشريف

Unit 1

1. Listen and choose:

1 : Ibrahim and his mom buy vegetables.
2 : In the morning, I like o drink milk.

Unit 2

1 : Monkeys are good at climbing trees.
2 : Football is my favorite sport.

Unit 3

1 : Galabayas are made from cotton.
2 : Most men and boys were galabayas in Eid.

Unit 4

1 : Hani was sleeping at 6 am.
2 : Rasha planted flowers the garden.

Unit 5

1 : plants need sunlight and water.
2 : Walid looks after hippos.

Unit 6

1. Egypt is hot summer.
2. We cook in the kitchen .

Activity 1

1 : Youssef is 12 years old.
2 : His father is doctor.

Activity 2

1 : The Nile Delta is in lower Egypt.
2 : The summer is very hot.